

INFORMATION TO USERS

This material was produced from a microfilm copy of the original document. While the most advanced technological means to photograph and reproduce this document have been used, the quality is heavily dependent upon the quality of the original submitted.

The following explanation of techniques is provided to help you understand markings or patterns which may appear on this reproduction.

1. The sign or "target" for pages apparently lacking from the document photographed is "Missing Page(s)". If it was possible to obtain the missing page(s) or section, they are spliced into the film along with adjacent pages. This may have necessitated cutting thru an image and duplicating adjacent pages to insure you complete continuity.
2. When an image on the film is obliterated with a large round black mark, it is an indication that the photographer suspected that the copy may have moved during exposure and thus cause a blurred image. You will find a good image of the page in the adjacent frame.
3. When a map, drawing or chart, etc., was part of the material being photographed the photographer followed a definite method in "sectioning" the material. It is customary to begin photoing at the upper left hand corner of a large sheet and to continue photoing from left to right in equal sections with a small overlap. If necessary, sectioning is continued again — beginning below the first row and continuing on until complete.
4. The majority of users indicate that the textual content is of greatest value, however, a somewhat higher quality reproduction could be made from "photographs" if essential to the understanding of the dissertation. Silver prints of "photographs" may be ordered at additional charge by writing the Order Department, giving the catalog number, title, author and specific pages you wish reproduced.
5. PLEASE NOTE: Some pages may have indistinct print. Filmed as received.

University Microfilms International

300 North Zeeb Road
Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106 USA
St. John's Road, Tyler's Green
High Wycombe, Bucks, England HP10 8HR

78-4373

LEVINE, Robert Daigon, 1947-
THE SKIDEGATE DIALECT OF HAIDA.

Columbia University, Ph.D., 1977
language, linguistics

University Microfilms International, Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106

© 1977

ROBERT DAIGON LEVINE

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

THE SKIDEGATE DIALECT OF HAIDA

Robert Daigon Levine

Submitted in partial fulfillment of the
requirements for
the degree of Doctor of Philosophy
in the Faculty of Political
Science

ABSTRACT

THE SKIDEGATE DIALECT OF HAIDA

ROBERT DAIGON LEVINE

The Haida language is spoken by the Native people of the Queen Charlotte Islands and in a few small areas of southeastern Alaska. There are two principal dialect continua: that represented by the speech community of Skidegate on the one hand and that of the Masset and Alaskan speech communities on the other. This study is devoted to a detailed structural description of the Skidegate dialect.

Chapter 1 explains the linguistic and ethnographic background of the study. Theoretical positions are stated, and an account of previous work on Haida is given, along with an assessment of Haida's historical position vis-à-vis the Na-Dene hypothesis. There is a brief description of linguistic variation within the Skidegate speech community and a comment on each of the four Skidegate speakers who served as a co-worker in the study. Ethnographic and historical material pertinent to the distribution and condition of the Haida speakership is presented.

Chapter 2 contains a description of Skidegate phonology. The chapter is divided into two parts. In the first part an inventory of (taxonomic) phonemes is given

and described in terms of manner and position of articulation. Pitch and stress are considered, minimal pairs documenting the phonemic analysis are listed and the syllable canon is described. In the second part of the chapter sets of ordered rules are given which permit the derivation of surface or shallow phonological representations from motivated underlying forms. From these rules it is evident that much of Skidegate phonology is functionally unified in a rule conspiracy to guarantee polysyllabic structure for inflected forms.

Chapter 3 gives an account of nominal formation and inflection. Nominals are defined on the basis of their inflectional possibilities, and are formed by compounding nominal roots and/or applying one of a small group of suffixes. Nominal inflection involves either old information reference or attributive reference.

Chapter 4 presents a description of predicate structure. The Skidegate predicate consists of a stem followed by inflectional suffixes divided into seven position classes: aspect suffixes, the plural, the negative, the habitual/periodic, tense/evidential suffixes, tense/modal suffixes and old information anaphora. These suffixes are examined in detail and their role in Skidegate grammar is illustrated. The stem is in turn analyzed into derivational elements (prefixes and suffixes) and a base. The derivational suffixes occur in four position classes following the base. Prefixes occur in two sets,

one containing three position classes and the other containing two classes. The first set consist, from right to left, of shape-classificatory elements, instrumentals and causatives. The second set consists of an intransitivizing element preceded by a causative. The base itself consists of one or more roots which may, in one or more cases, have an attached derivational suffix. When the predicate is used in a dependent clause, various suffixes replace the tense/modal suffixes.

In Chapter 5 the particles are classified on the basis of their syntactic function and described in detail. A brief syntactic characterization of particles in terms of the structure of Noun Phrases and Skidegate word order is given.

In Chapter 6 a personal narrative text in Skidegate is given, along with a detailed breakdown of the narrative into progressively finer units of discourse.

In Chapter 7 a brief typological comparison of Haida with other Northwestern languages is offered in terms of general structural organization and areas of particular elaboration. In terms of this survey Haida appears to be structurally somewhat anomalous in the general linguistic setting of the Northwest.

TO MY PARENTS
AND
TO MARY ANNE

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

It is always a pleasure to record publically one's gratitude to others for assistance given in some major undertaking. In the present instance, however, a full accounting is not possible; too many people have contributed to this enterprise, and I shall have to be content with assuring those who have helped me, during the past half decade and more, that I greatly appreciate their efforts. In a number of cases, however, it has been the generosity and goodwill of individuals or groups which enabled my work to go on at all, and I wish to note these specifically.

The Skidegate speakers with whom I worked provided the resources for this study. I have identified them in the text and wish to here again: Mrs. Gertrude Kelly, Mr. Solomon Wilson, Mrs. Hazel Stevens and the late Mrs. Becky Pearson. Their role in the process of linguistic discovery was in several respects more difficult than my own--there can be few things as frustrating as trying to convey what should be quite obvious information to someone who does not catch on immediately--and I am grateful to all of them for their patience.

The National Science Foundation made my research

physically possible by providing substantial financial support.

For the advice and guidance of which this dissertation is the product I am indebted to members of the Departments of Anthropology and Linguistics at Columbia University in New York. In particular I wish to thank Professor Harvey Pitkin, my advisor over many years, and other faculty who also served on my committee: Professors John Attinasi, Robert Austeritz and Abraham Rosman; Professor Conrad Arensberg; and Professor Robert F Murphy, whose sympathetic encouragement during the various low and high points of my graduate career never failed.

To Nancy and Robert Turner of Victoria, British Columbia, I owe much more than the usual debt of friendship, for I had never before been outside New York when I began fieldwork on the B.C. coast, and one need not go very far out of one's own doors in order to experience genuinely frightening culture shock. Friendship and hospitality given freely under these conditions are not merely welcome; they are infinitely precious. One soon learns in the field that morale is as important as academic training, and at the very beginning is a good deal more so.

There are others to whom I am still more deeply indebted for the most fundamental kind of support in this as in all

other ventures, and their names are given in the
dedication.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1 Methodological Preliminaries.	3
1.1 Linguistic Background.	3
1.1.1 Scope of Research.	3
1.1.2 The Historical Position of Haida.	8
1.1.3 Previous Research on Haida Grammar.	11
1.1.4 Information Sources for Skidegate Haida.	23
1.1.5 Linguistic Variation in Skidegate Haida.	25
1.2 Ethnographic Background.	30
1.2.1 Precontact Haida Society.	32
1.2.1.1 Social Organization.	32
1.2.1.2 Economic Activity.	33
1.2.2 Contact and its Effects.	36
1.2.3 The Modern Situation.	38
1.3 Research Goals.	40
Chapter 2 Phonology.	44
2.1 Skidegate Phonology: a summary.	44
2.2 Phonemes and their arrangements.	45
2.2.1 The Phoneme Inventory.	45
2.2.2 Consonants.	46
2.2.2.1 Stops.	46
2.2.2.1.1 Bilabials.	48
2.2.2.1.2 Alveodentals.	48

2.2.2.1.2.1 Plain Stops.	48
2.2.2.1.2.2 Affricates.	49
2.2.2.1.3 Velars.	51
2.2.2.1.4 Uvulars.	52
2.2.2.1.5 Glottal.	53
2.2.2.2 Fricatives.	53
2.2.2.2.1 Alveodentals.	54
2.2.2.2.2 Velar.	54
2.2.2.2.3 Uvular.	55
2.2.2.2.4 Glottal.	55
2.2.2.3 Sonorants.	55
2.2.2.3.1 Nasal Sonorants.	55
2.2.2.3.2 Oral Sonorants.	56
2.2.2.3.2.1 Lateral Sonorants.	56
2.2.2.3.2.2 Semivowels.	56
2.2.3 Vowels.	57
2.2.4 Suprasegmental phenomena.	60
2.2.5 Minimal pairs.	65
2.2.6 The Syllable Canon.	69
2.3 Phonological rules.	71
Chapter 3 Nominal Forms.	85
3.1 Introduction.	85
3.2 Noun Formation.	85

3.2.1	Roots.	85
3.2.2	Complex Forms.	86
3.2.2.1	Nominals containing $\{-\text{'u}\}$	86
3.2.2.2	Nominals containing Shape Classifiers.	88
3.2.2.3	Nominals containing $\{-\text{gya}\}$	89
3.2.2.4	Nominals containing $\{-\text{dan}\}$	90
3.2.2.5	Nominals containing $\{-\text{t'isgu}\}$	90
3.2.2.6	Nominal Sequences.	91
3.3	Nominal Inflection.	93
3.3.1	Old and New Information.	93
3.3.2	Numeration and Aggregation.	97
3.3.3	Attribution.	99
3.3.3.1	Kinship Terms.	99
3.3.3.2	Possession.	101
3.3.3.3	General Attribution.	102
Chapter 4	Predicate Structure.	103
4.1	Summary of Predicate Structures	103
4.2	Independent Predicate Structure.	103
4.2.1	Derivation and Inflection.	105
4.2.2	Inflectional Suffixes.	109
4.2.2.1	Position Class 1.	109
4.2.2.1.1	$\{-\text{xidi}\}$	109
4.2.2.1.2	$\{-\text{di}\}$	110

4.2.2.1.3	-{gi}	112
4.2.2.1.4	-{sgi}	113
4.2.2.2	Position Class 2	113
4.2.2.3	Position Class 3	114
4.2.2.4	Position Class 4	114
4.2.2.5	Position Class 5	115
4.2.2.5.1	-{ǵas}	115
4.2.2.5.2	-{ga}	116
4.2.2.6	Position Class 6	119
4.2.2.6.1	-{ga}	119
4.2.2.6.2	-{gAn}	120
4.2.2.6.3	-{gan}	121
4.2.2.7	-{i}	122
4.2.2.7.1	Explicit Old Information	122
4.2.2.7.1.1	Nominal Old Information	122
4.2.2.7.1.2	Deictic Pronouns	123
4.2.2.7.1.3	Locational Phrases	124
4.2.2.7.2	Implicit Old Information	125
4.2.2.7.3	Current Status of Old Information Anaphora	125
4.2.3	The Predicate Stem	126
4.2.3.1	Derivational Suffixes	126
4.2.3.1.1	Position Class 1	126
4.2.3.1.1.1	Subset 1	127

4.2.3.1.1.1.1	-{ga}	127
4.2.3.1.1.1.2	-{ǵa}	127
4.2.3.1.1.2	Subset 2.	128
4.2.3.1.1.2.1	-{či}	128
4.2.3.1.1.2.2	-{xuɫ}	129
4.2.3.1.1.2.3	-{ɫʌ}	129
4.2.3.1.1.2.4	-{tʌɫ}	129
4.2.3.1.1.2.5	-{ǵuŋ}	129
4.2.3.1.1.2.6	-{ʌǵa}	130
4.2.3.1.1.2.7	-{ʌʌ}	130
4.2.3.1.1.2.8	-{giǵʌŋ}	130
4.2.3.1.1.3	Subset 3.	131
4.2.3.1.1.3.1	-{ju}	131
4.2.3.1.1.3.2	-{dʌʌ}	131
4.2.3.1.1.3.3	-{ʔʌŋ}	132
4.2.3.1.1.4	Subset 4.	132
4.2.3.1.1.4.1	-{ʔu}	132
4.2.3.1.1.4.2	-{ǵʌŋ}	133
4.2.3.1.2	Position Class 2.	133
4.2.3.1.2.1	-{sʌʌ}	133
4.2.3.1.2.2	-{ʌgʌŋ}	134
4.2.3.1.3	Position Class 3	134
4.2.3.1.4	Position Class 4.	135

4.2.3.1.4.1	-{ǵa}	135
4.2.3.1.4.2	-{ʔin}	136
4.2.3.1.5	Residual Suffixes	136
4.2.3.1.5.1	-{ǵu}	136
4.2.3.1.5.2	-{ǵa}	136
4.2.3.1.5.3	-{gʌŋ}	137
4.2.3.1.5.4	-{ǵʌl}	137
4.2.3.1.5.5	-{ǵʌŋa}	137
4.2.3.1.5.6	-{dʌŋ}	138
4.2.3.2	Prefixes	138
4.2.3.2.1	Prefix Set 1	138
4.2.3.2.1.1	Position Class 1	139
4.2.3.2.1.1.1	{ǵa}-	139
4.2.3.2.1.1.2	{ǵa}-	140
4.2.3.2.1.1.3	{gu}-	141
4.2.3.2.1.1.4	{ǵay}-	141
4.2.3.2.1.1.5	{ǵʌŋ}-	142
4.2.3.2.1.1.6	{ǵa}	142
4.2.3.2.1.1.7	{tay}-	142
4.2.3.2.1.1.8	<u>sda</u> ~ <u>sga</u> -	143
4.2.3.2.1.1.9	{ta}	143
4.2.3.2.1.1.10	{ska}	143
4.2.3.2.1.1.11	{ku}	144
4.2.3.2.1.1.12	{sq̣a}	144

4.2.3.2.1.1.13 { ² taw}-	144
4.2.3.2.1.1.14 {ska}-	145
4.2.3.2.1.1.15 {igi}-	145
4.2.3.2.1.1.16 {s ³ ʌ}-	145
4.2.3.2.1.1.17 {ci}-	146
4.2.3.2.1.1.18 { ² ci}-	146
4.2.3.2.1.1.19 {gi}-	147
4.2.3.2.1.1.20 { ² qu}-	147
4.2.3.2.1.1.21 { ² is}-	147
4.2.3.2.1.1.22 {ʌ}-	147
4.2.3.2.1.1.23 {squad}-	148
4.2.3.2.1.1.24 {xʌ}-	148
4.2.3.2.1.1.25 { ² kʌ}-	148
4.2.3.2.1.1.26 {yu}-	148
4.2.3.2.1.1.27 {qil}-	149
4.2.3.2.1.1.28 { ² ʌb}-	149
4.2.3.2.1.1.29 { ² ʌm}-	149
4.2.3.2.1.1.30 {dʌb}-	149
4.2.3.2.1.1.31 {dʌm}-	149
4.2.3.2.1.1.32 {sgʌb}-	150
4.2.3.2.1.1.33 {sgʌm}-	150
4.2.3.2.1.1.34 { ² ʌd}-	150
4.2.3.2.1.2 Classificatory Roots.	154

4.2.3.2.1.3 Position Class 2.	156
4.2.3.2.1.3.1 {da}-	156
4.2.3.2.1.3.2 {dʌŋ}-	157
4.2.3.2.1.3.3 {ʌu}-	157
4.2.3.2.1.3.4 {gay}-	157
4.2.3.2.1.3.5 {qu}-	157
4.2.3.2.1.3.6 {ʔun}-	158
4.2.3.2.1.3.7 {sɥud}-	158
4.2.3.2.1.3.8 {kid}-	158
4.2.3.2.1.3.9 {xʌ}-	160
4.2.3.2.1.3.10 {ʌʌ}-	161
4.2.3.2.1.4 Position Class 3.	161
4.2.3.2.1.4.1 {gɪŋ}-	161
4.2.3.2.1.4.2 {kil}-	161
4.2.3.2.2 Prefix Set 2.	162
4.2.3.2.2.1 Position Class 1.	162
4.2.3.2.2.2 Position Class 2.	162
4.2.4 The Predicate Base.	163
4.3 Dependent Predicate Structure.	166
4.3.1 Embedding Constructions.	166
4.3.1.1 Object Clauses.	166
4.3.1.2 Adverbial Clauses.	168
4.3.2 Nominalized Predicates.	170

4.4 Personal Pronouns.	171
Chapter 5 Particles.	175
5.1 Introduction.	175
5.2 Pro-Nominals.	176
5.2.1 Interrogative Pro-Nominals.	177
5.2.1.1 {gasin}	177
5.2.1.2 {gisdu}	177
5.2.1.3 {gismud}	178
5.2.1.4 {gin}.	178
5.2.1.5 {gus}.	178
5.2.1.6 {gislu}.	179
5.2.1.7 {gikus}.	179
5.2.1.8 {ginis}.	180
5.2.2 Non-interrogative Pro-Nominals.	180
5.2.2.1 {gina}.	180
5.2.2.2 {ʌgu}.	180
5.3 Postpositions.	181
5.3.1 {ʔun}.	181
5.3.2 {xid}.	181
5.3.3 {xʌŋ}.	182
5.3.4 {gu}.	182
5.3.5 {ǵa}.	185
5.3.6 {gi}.	186

5.3.7 {sda}	186
5.3.8 {ǧi}	187
5.3.9 {ǧuǧa}	187
5.3.10 {ǧan}	188
5.3.11 {tǎlgi}	188
5.3.12 {?ad}	189
5.3.13 {dǎn?ad}	189
5.3.14 {tawǧan}	189
5.3.15 {ǧa}	190
5.4 Postpositional Phrase Pro-forms	190
5.4.1 {ǧad}	191
5.4.2 {sih}	192
5.4.3 {kyah}	193
5.4.4 {gud}	193
5.4.5 {hiǧǧan}	194
5.4.6 {λAsda}	195
5.4.7 {huyad}	195
5.5 Prepositions	195
5.5.1 {?a}	196
5.5.2 {hAw}	196
5.5.3 {wa}	198
5.6 Adverbials	199
5.6.1 {λu}	200
5.6.2 {gyan}	201

5.6.3 {ǵagʌn}	201
5.6.4 {kʌŋǵasda}	202
5.6.5 {qʌwɗi}	203
5.6.6 {di}	203
5.6.7 {sʰkʌn}	204
5.6.8 {kʌwǵa}	204
5.7 Modal Particles	204
5.7.1 {gʌm}	205
5.7.2 {ʔa}	205
5.7.3 {ɬa}	206
5.7.4 {gwa}	207
5.8 Emphatic Particles	207
5.8.1 {hʌw}	208
5.8.3 {xʌn}	209
5.9 Unclassified Particles	210
5.9.1 {ʔada}	210
5.9.2 {ʔaŋa}	210
5.9.3 <u>ʔasǵid</u>	211
5.9.4 <u>ɬʌǵid</u>	212
5.9.5 <u>xʌǵid</u>	212
5.9.6 {ʔu}	212
5.9.7 {ga}	213
5.9.8 {lu}	214
5.9.9 {guɮu}	214

5.9.10 {gaŋaŋ}	215
5.9.11 {gya}	216
5.9.12 <u>ǰaʔadǰa</u>	216
5.9.13 {ǰaŋa}	216
5.9.14 {ʌaŋ}	217
5.9.15 {walu}	217
5.9.16 {ʔasiŋ}	217
5.10 Syntactic Analysis of Particles.	218
Chapter 6 Analysis of a Haida Text.	223
6.1 Introduction.	223
6.2 Becky Pearson's Narrative.	224
6.3 Analysis of the Text.	227
6.3.1 First Discourse Unit.	227
6.3.1.1 C ₁	227
6.3.1.2 C ₂	227
6.3.1.3 C ₃	227
6.3.2 Second Discourse Unit.	228
6.3.2.1 S ₁	228
6.3.2.2 S ₂	228
6.3.3 Third Discourse Unit.	229
6.3.3.1 S ₁	229
6.3.3.1.1 C ₁	229
6.3.3.1.2 C ₂	230

6.3.3.2 S_2	230
6.3.3.2.1 C_1	230
6.3.3.2.2 C_2	231
6.3.3.2.3 C_3	231
6.3.4 Fourth Discourse Unit.	231
6.3.4.1 S_1	231
6.3.4.1.1 C_1	232
6.3.4.1.2 C_2	232
6.3.4.1.3 C_3	232
6.3.4.2 S_2	232
6.3.4.2.1 C_1	232
6.3.4.2.2 C_2	233
6.3.5 Fifth Discourse Unit.	233
6.3.5.1 S_1	233
6.3.5.1.1 C_1	233
6.3.5.1.2 C_2	234
6.3.5.2 S_2	234
6.3.5.3 S_3	234
6.3.5.3.1 C_1	234
6.3.5.3.2 C_2	234
6.3.6 Sixth Discourse Unit.	235
6.3.6.1 S_1	235
6.3.6.1.1 C_1	235
6.3.6.1.2 C_2	236

6.3.6.1.3 C ₃	236
6.3.6.2 S ₂	236
6.3.6.2.1 C ₁	236
6.3.6.2.2 C ₂	237
6.3.6.3 S ₃	237
6.3.6.3.1 C ₁	238
6.3.6.3.2 C ₂	238
6.3.6.4 S ₄	238
6.3.6.5 S ₅	238
6.3.6.5.1 C ₁	238
6.3.6.5.2 C ₂	238
6.3.7 Seventh Discourse Unit.	239
6.3.8 Eighth Discourse Unit.	239
6.3.8.1 C ₁	239
6.3.8.2 C ₂	239
6.3.9 Ninth Discourse Unit.	240
6.3.9.1 S ₁	240
6.3.9.2 S ₂	241
6.3.10 Tenth Discourse Unit.	241
6.3.10.1 C ₁	241
6.3.10.2 C ₂	242
6.3.11 Eleventh Discourse Unit.	242
6.3.11.1 C ₁	242
6.3.11.2 C ₂	243

6.3.12 Twelfth Discourse Unit.	243
6.3.12.1 S ₁	244
6.3.12.2 S ₂	244
6.3.12.3 S ₃	245
6.3.13 Thirteenth Discourse Unit.	245
6.3.13.1 S ₁	245
6.3.13.1.1 C ₁	245
6.3.13.1.2 C ₂	246
6.3.13.1.3 C ₃	246
6.3.13.2 S ₂	246
6.3.13.2.1 C ₁	246
6.3.13.2.2 C ₂	247
6.3.14 Fourteenth Discourse Unit.	247
Chapter 7 Haida in Context.	248
Index of Affixes and Particles.	260
Bibliography.	268

LIST OF CHARTS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

	<u>page</u>
Map 1 The Queen Charlotte Islands	1
Map 2 The Northern Northwest Coast	2
Chart 1 Analytic Levels of the Predicate	106
Chart 2 Inflectional Suffixes	106
Chart 3 Derivational Suffixes	107
Chart 4 Prefixes	108

LIST OF SYMBOLS AND CONVENTIONS

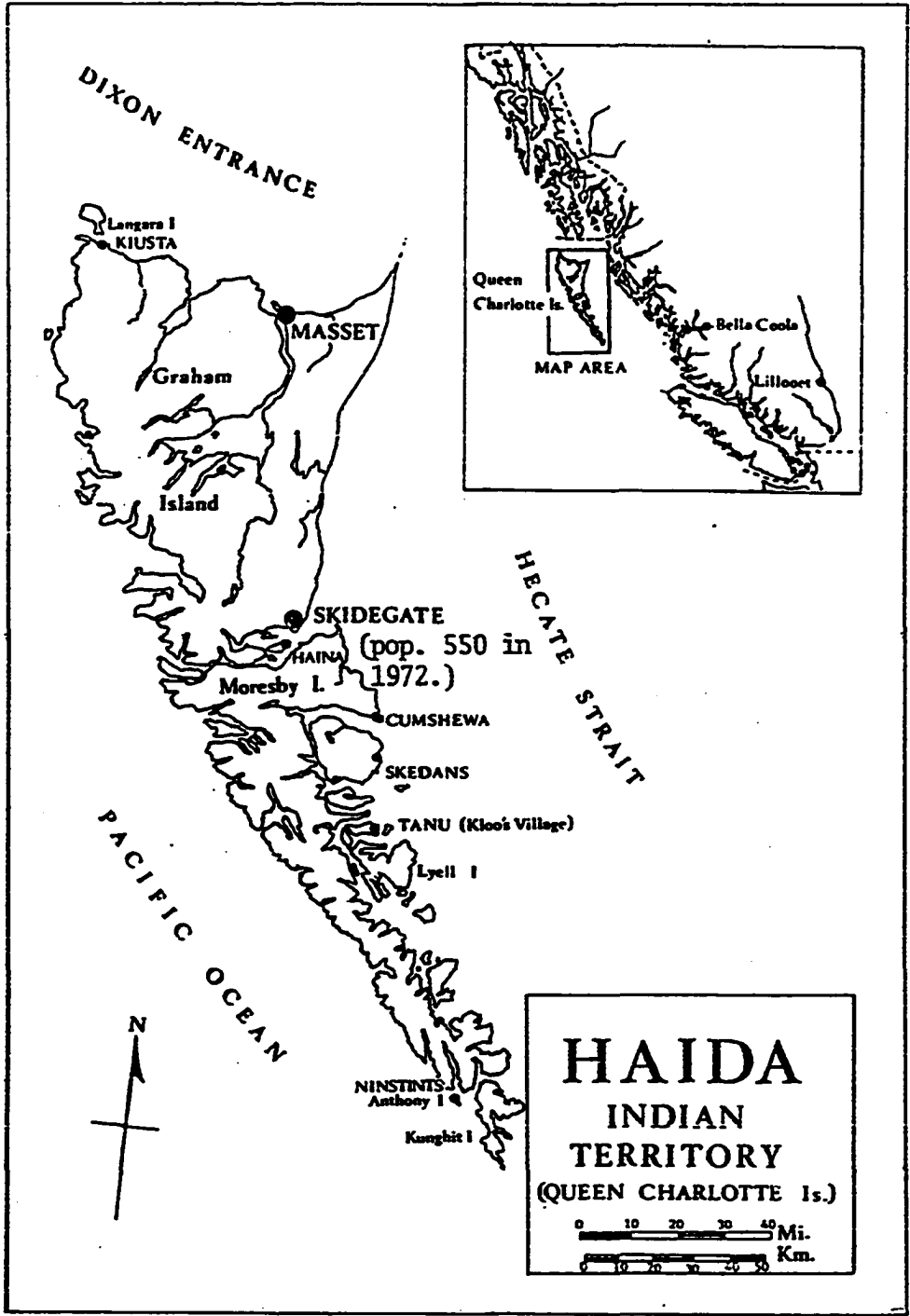
//	phonemic representation
[]	phonetic representation
—	underlying representation
{ }	morphemic representation
$X \rightarrow Y/A$	Y replaces X in the environment A.
X	
+	Representation Y immediately succeeds representation X in a given phonological derivation
Y	
$A:B :: C:D$	The relation between A and B is logically equivalent to the relation between C and D
*X	X is not synchronically attested
$A []_A$	The elements which appear within the brackets form a constituent whose label in some syntactic representation is A
(A)	The appearance of A is optional
ϕ	The null element
+	In the statement of phonological rules, this symbol indicates morpheme boundaries, and also a positive value for a feature. In Chapters 4, 5 and 6 + indicates derivational status for the affix with which it is associated
-	Indicates morpheme boundaries in the breakdowns provided for words. When a morpheme is referred to in the text, - precedes it if a suffix and follows it if a prefix

A ~ B

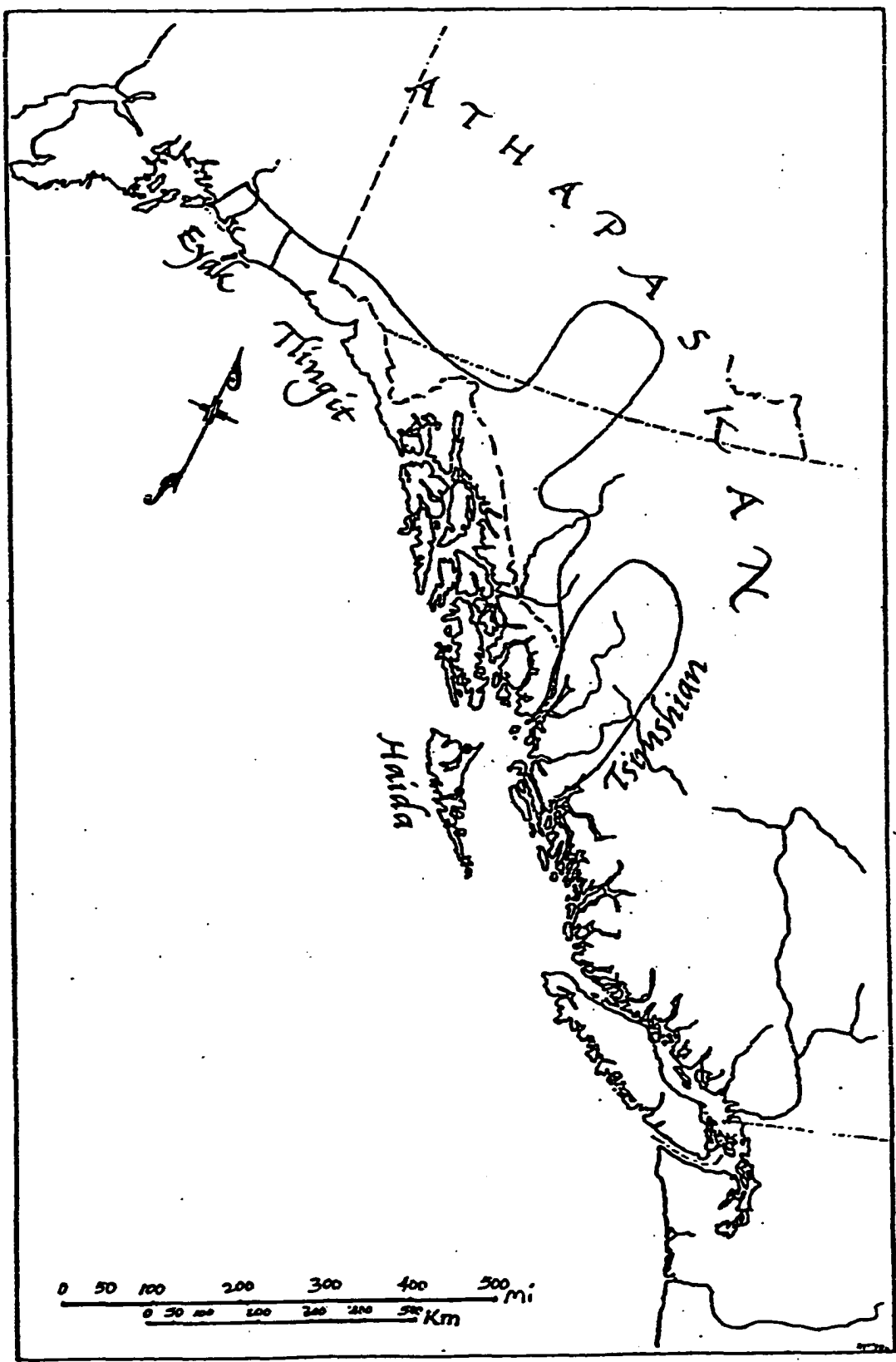
A alternates with B

#_X

The boundary specified by X



MAP 1 The Queen Charlotte Islands (reproduced from Turner 1974.)



MAP 2 The Northern Northwest Coast (prepared by R.D. Turner.)

Chapter 1 Methodological Preliminaries

1.1 Linguistic Background

1.1.1 Scope of Research

The following chapters contain a partial account of Skidegate Haida grammar, that is, the corpus of statements specifying the units of the language and the constraints upon their combination. I have concentrated on two subareas of the grammar, phonology and word structure. These, being finite in scope, can be investigated in far greater depth than can the rules governing combinations of words, encompassing syntax and discourse structure. The latter fields are open-ended and cannot, in any case, be approached without considerable understanding of phonology and morphology. The bulk of this dissertation consists of a description of the major word classes of Skidegate Haida (SkH), based upon their privileges of occurrence in grammatical constructions and upon their inflectional possibilities. I precede this description with a summary of the phonological forms in terms of which morphemes and morphs are represented and the rules governing these phonological elements. I conclude with an analysis of a SkH text illustrating the dynamic functioning of the language and a broad overview of the "geist" of Haida grammar in relation to the Northwest linguistic area as a whole. Within each of the chapters on word structure I have provided an inventory of morphemes, a statement of their div-

ision into position classes where appropriate, and all the rules of which I am aware determining the co-occurrence of members of different position classes.

This work contains a particular theoretical orientation, as does all description, whether overtly or implicitly. I recognize that the overwhelming thrust of the past twenty years' linguistic investigation has eliminated the notion that a separate level of phonological representation exists shallower than the most underlying and deeper than the phonetic. The so-called taxonomic phoneme which was supposedly defined at this level of representation has been successfully challenged from two perspectives. Chomsky (1964) has demonstrated that the phonemic level was, at best, ill-defined formally, while Halle (1959), Postal (1968) and many others have shown that the concept does not lead to insightful applications, since taxonomic phonemic descriptions are inherently incapable of capturing certain types of generalization. To ignore these advances of modern research would, in my view, be indefensible.

It is also true, however, that at least one investigator has adduced evidence to show that certain distributional contrasts among phonetic segments are regarded as salient by speakers of a given language. Schane (1971) presents suggestive arguments from several languages to show that certain types of surface contrast, once established, will lead to rules eliminating the contrastive phonological fea-

tures where these occur non-contrastively. To account for the psychological salience Schane believes his examples prove for this type of surface contrast, he proposes that the concept "phonemic" be given status in generative theory, though in a radically different way from the usual formulations of structural linguistics: "... the phoneme is not to be defined as an entity found at some autonomous level, but [is] deduced from the surface representations by considering the function of the rules leading to those representations." (Schane 1971, p. 518.)

It is clear from Schane's comments that there is a phonemic surface contrast between two segments when it is not possible to predict from any consistent feature of phonetic context which segment will appear in a given surface environment. This condition may arise for any of several reasons, all of which, in Schane's discussion, involve recourse to grammatical information to explain the source of the contrast. It may also be true, however, that two segments are in surface contrast not because of any particular rule application, but simply because they represent the fully specified feature matrices of two different underlying forms which never undergo morphophonemic change, and that these surface segments are never generated except as reflexes of unique underlying forms. This is often the

case in SkH, where phonetic representations are frequently isomorphic with underlying representations.

In describing the phonology of SkH, therefore, I refer to three types of entity: underlying forms, established through reference to grammatical information; units of surface contrast (phonemes), indicating all those segments which are mutually non-predictable on the basis of phonetic data; and phones, which represent acoustically and articulatorily defined segments of the stream of speech sounds. Underlying forms are underlined, phonemes appear within slashes (/ /) and phones within brackets ([]).

It is true that Schane, in his article, does not really define "phoneme" within the context of generative theory so much as he defines the notion "phonemic." Extrapolating from his formulation, I define a phoneme as the output of a sequence of phonological rules at the point at which the last rule has applied that makes reference to information which will not be present at the surface (and, as a corollary, at which all further feature specifications are supplied by what Schane refers to as "phonetic" rules.) To identify a phoneme thus requires knowledge of a complete phonological derivation, and in this sense phonemes, unlike either underlying forms or phones, are "global" segments, using this term as it applies in current generative theory.

On the other hand, I have avoided a generative metalanguage as much as possible for non-phonological parts of the grammar. To utilize generative representation in these areas would imply a knowledge of the derivational history of sentences, including, of course, the output of the base component, and I cannot at this point put forward a set of base rules for SkH on the basis of my data. The languages of the Northwest are in many respects not amenable to such formulation, particularly those of the Salishan and Wakashan families. Haida does not cut across traditional grammatical categories in nearly so spectacular a fashion as these languages; even so, I have approached characterizations of SkH syntax cautiously, although I invoke syntactic information when it is required to explain the distribution of morphemes. For the most part I have concerned myself with word structure. I regard the SkH word as a grammatical structure within which constituents occur in a fixed order; which is itself permutable with respect to other, similarly established units, and which can be identified by native speakers of Haida as meaningful in isolation. In addition, certain phonological rules apply across affix boundaries but not across word boundaries. A word may consist of a root, a root plus one or more affixes, or a compound of two or more roots any of which may have an attached affix, with the further possibility that any of these structures may appear with prefixes or inflectional suffixes. Precise

delineation of the canon for the Skh stem ("stem" designating the remainder of a word after inflectional suffixes have been removed) does not appear to be possible at this stage of research.

The data base upon which I have constructed my analysis was collected during a series of elicitation sessions each lasting, generally, three to four hours. In the first phase of research I collected lexical items. After mastering the phonetics of pronunciation and comprehension I began to collect more complex forms which appeared to correspond to sentences. Finally I elicited a series of personal narrative texts and concluded by re-eliciting one of Swanton's traditional narratives, reading his transcription to my Haida co-worker and writing her version as she repeated or corrected what Swanton had written.

1.1.2 The Historical Position of Haida

The debate over the historical position of Haida, and the so-called Na-Dene phylum generally, goes back more than eighty years. Haida was first grouped with Tlingit and the Athapaskan languages by Boas (1894) and Swanton (1908) and the label "Na-Dene" was first applied to this grouping by Sapir (1915). Sapir presented a number of specific morphological resemblances among the Na-Dene languages and a number of putative cognate sets to support his claim that Na-Dene was a genetic grouping, basing his

model of Haida grammar on Swanton's 1911 description.

In 1920 Goddard challenged Sapir's claim for Tlingit on the grounds that Tlingit revealed only a marginal number of possible cognates with Athapaskan. Goddard (1920) noted that the explanations which had been offered to account for this lack of lexical cognacy between Tlingit and Athapaskan were so unconstrained that they could be used to support almost any claim of historical connection, regardless of the degree of resemblance among the languages in question. In his later years Boas became skeptical of the genetic basis of Na-Dene, largely on the same grounds as Goddard.

Throughout the debate, there appears to have been a tacit recognition that Haida was the most questionable candidate for inclusion in a Na-Dene phylum. Yet, although Boas' editorial corrections in Swanton's grammar should have served notice that the 1911 HAIL description of Haida contained a certain imprecision in the statement of the morphology, virtually all subsequent speculations on Haida vis-a-vis Na-Dene have relied heavily on Swanton's formulations. Sapir essentially repeated Swanton in setting forth position classes for his 1915 article, and Hymes (1956) retained Sapir's position classes, although introducing certain formal innovations. These structural models have borne the burden of support for Haida's place in Na-Dene;

however, as noted above, Sapir did present some lexical evidence involving Haida, and more recently H.-J. Pinnow has relied almost exclusively on lexical comparison to support his own defense of the "classical" Na-Dene hypothesis (e.g., Pinnow 1968.)

Within the past decade a new picture of Na-Dene has begun to emerge. The role of Eyak, a language now known to be related to Athapaskan, has taken on the utmost importance from the comparative point of view, since comparisons of both grammar and lexicon must be made, not merely with proto-Athapaskan forms but with proto-Athapaskan-Eyak. Even within proto-Athapaskan, modern research into Alaskan Athapaskan languages points to a very different picture of the early history of this family than that which appears in Sapir's 1915 lexical comparison. One result is that the putative cognates Sapir adduced seem, on examination, to be largely spurious, at least insofar as Haida is concerned. Furthermore, the picture of Haida morphology which is emerging in current investigations turns out to have very little in common with Athapaskan-Eyak and Tlingit. The latter display extremely significant grammatical continuities (see, for example, Krauss 1969) and a slowly but steadily increasing inventory of apparently genuine lexical cognates which are nowhere reflected in Haida. Krauss has, since 1969 at the latest, maintained that whatever genetic

reality Na-Dene may have does not include Haida, and Pinnow appears to share this view, to some extent at least (p.c.). On the other hand, Krauss has become increasingly convinced of a genetic link between Tlingit and Athapaskan-Eyak, involving not only affixal morphemes but roots as well, a position Pinnow has long advocated. There are thus signs of a developing consensus within Na-Dene studies that a proto-Athapaskan-Eyak-Tlingit did indeed exist, and that extremely prolonged contact between this language or its daughter languages and the ancestors of modern Haida is entirely adequate as an explanation of resemblances between Haida and the revised Na-Dene group. (Note the spatial contiguity of these languages indicated in Map 2.)

1.1.3 Previous Research on Haida Grammar

Serious work on Haida grammar begins with Harrison's account of the Masset dialect (Harrison 1893.) Harrison, a missionary active on the northern British Columbia coast, was far less gifted than his successor Keen as a phonetician and analyst; thus he completely ignored the distinction between ejective and non-ejective segments, merging the two series in favor of the latter type. He also failed to note pharyngeal stops. His grammatical statement consists principally of a large number of paradigms illustrating some of the tense and aspect combinations in the verb. He provides minimum analysis of words, following the word-in-paradigm

model of description common to Latinate grammars of the time.

Keen's description of the Masset dialect (Keen 1906) is far more satisfactory. Keen accurately transcribed forms containing ejective segments, and he was insightful enough to realize the pharyngeal aspects of articulation of both the pharyngeal stop /ʕ/ and the laryngealized continuants, using an apostrophe in both cases. Keen's statement contains discussions of nouns, verbs and particles; while he does divide the class of verbs into an unnecessarily large number of word classes, his analysis of verb morphology is often acute. Keen too offers a number of verb paradigms, as well as general vocabulary including names, numbers and pronouns; in addition, however, he actually identifies a number of inflectional suffixes and indicates their relative position.

By far the most complete presentation of Haida grammar extant is Swanton's chapter on the Skidegate dialect in the Handbook of American Indian Languages (Swanton 1911.) The bulk of this work is taken up with listing what Boas, in the Introduction, refers to as "major psychological groupings" of predicate morphemes. Each morpheme is listed, under its appropriate "grouping," and is provided with a meaning, or at least a rubric, usually accompanied by illustrative examples. These "psychological groupings" do not correspond exactly to position classes in Swanton's

practice, since co-occurring forms are often grouped under the same category. Nonetheless, some principle of syntagmatic ordering is present in Swanton's presentation, although semantic and distributional facts have not been separated sufficiently in his analysis of the predicate. Swanton also presents a brief discussion of particles containing some speculation on possible internal reconstruction, as well as a vocabulary list and an annotated text. Boas has made a few editorial comments in Swanton's presentation where the analysis appeared incomplete or inaccurate. It is worth noting that Swanton's data base appears to have been exclusively textual; there is no evidence of any paradigmatic elicitation whatsoever. Because of its seminal importance for later speculations about Na-Dene, I have made detailed comments on Swanton's analysis in separate sections or in footnotes in appropriate chapters.

The three researchers discussed above represent the only extensive field experience devoted to Haida until quite recently. Linguists after Swanton seem to have regarded his work as in some sense definitive, and even those who were aware that Haida required re-examination avoided serious contact with the language. During this phase most work involving Haida drew heavily on Swanton's analysis, as noted earlier, even where these later discussions were critical of his HAIL grammar. This tendency was well illustrated in

two articles which appeared in the second volume of IJAL. Both articles offer serious challenge to Swanton's view of Haida structure. Sapir's paper is modestly titled "The Phonetics of Haida" (Sapir 1923); in modern terms the article touches on phonetics, morphophonemics, morphology and internal reconstruction. Haerberlin's paper presents a re-analysis, or suggestions for a re-analysis, of the Skidegate predicate based on what he regards as material in Swanton's texts contradictory to the formulation given in the HAIL sketch.

Sapir's paper is one of his most ambitious and imaginative, and contains many excellent insights considering the two or three hours of first-hand elicitation on which it was based. Yet this limited exposure inevitably led Sapir to a number of implausible conclusions and analytic infelicities. Thus, he analyzes consonants with secondary articulations as unit segments, in spite of considerable evidence that such segments are better represented at even shallow phonological levels as consonant + semivowel (or even consonant + vowel) sequences. It is true that such sequences are unit segments phonetically, but Sapir's distinction between "primary" and "secondary" consonants makes clear that the forty-seven primary segments he sets up are not surface units. Sapir criticized Swanton's transcriptions in several places, which is not in itself surprising--they are are very far from perfect--but Sapir's

evidence is often weak. For example, he observes that "After an accented short vowel Swanton heard a t before dj and j... the firm, voiceless attack of the dj after a markedly short vowel created the illusion of a syllable-closing consonant." (Sapir 1923, p. 146). But Sapir was unaware of the form [kʰaq̃ʷi] "(something small) fall," which normally would be pronounced [kʰaʷi] if the first syllable were not at least phonetically closed. It therefore seems likely that the form which Swanton transcribes kʰAtdju "small," provoking the preceding comment by Sapir, really does have a syllable-closing consonant following the first vowel, and that while the underlying form of the shape classificatory element is kʰA, its surface form always appears with a following consonant in accordance with the general constraint forbidding final [A] in open syllables. Sapir imagined, moreover, that all occurrences of [A] (ā in his orthography) could be derived from an underlying a, but minimal pairs exist to refute this supposition. To some extent Sapir's difficulties with the vowels were based on ill-founded morpheme division: he segmented {-gʌn} "past" into {-ga} "independent clause structure"-{n} "'to be at a given moment of time, to happen" with no justification presented anywhere for the latter gloss. Supposedly a→A/ __nasal, but this rule does not hold up in view of the abundant examples of

[a] preceding nasals; thus there is a minimal pair

[ǰan] "berry," [ǰʌn] "for, on behalf of."

The preceding instance reveals that in spite of the announced topic, Sapir's focus in the paper is morphology, not phonetics. So does the comment which immediately follows his analysis of $-\{gʌn\}$: "I hope to show at a future opportunity that the whole tense-modal system of Haida is nothing but a loose compounding of demonstrative elements and particle verbs and that the synthetic nature of this scheme is more apparent than real. Thus Swanton's 'infallible' future is merely a verb phrase 'a-sa-ŋ-[a] 'this will be [duratively].'" (Sapir 1923, p.154.) Here and elsewhere Sapir indulges in demonstrably incorrect etymologizing. Ironically, much of the weakness of his challenge to Swanton rests on his acceptance of Swanton's errors, as in this case. Sapir here identifies the initial segments of Swanton's $-asaŋ$ with the deictic particle $\{ʔa\}$; the future suffix is not $-asaŋ$, however, but $-\{ǰas\}$, where $ǰ$ deletes in most of Swanton's examples, as is predictable. The $[aŋ]$ remaining belongs to $-\{gʌn\}$ "independent old information," whose initial $g \rightarrow \emptyset$ under a wide variety of conditions. Thus, the actual analysis of $-asaŋ$ is not what Sapir claimed at all, but rather $-\{ǰas\}-\{gʌn\}$. Following Swanton, Sapir confused different morphemes

which all have the underlying shape $-g\Lambda\eta$. A comparable instance of indefensible etymologizing may be found in his discussion of the existence predicate $\{?i\check{y}\}$ ($i\cdot ji$ in Sapir's writing) on pp. 150-151 of his article.

In spite of these serious flaws, there is much of value in Sapir's paper, particularly in his discussion of the difficult problems posed by $[L\text{ə}l]$ syllables, where L represents any lateral element, and in his perception of the morphological link between shape classificatory roots with final m and those with final b. In addition, Sapir seems to me to have understood the problems of supersegmental phonology in Haida far better than any investigator so far. The existence of a single pitch minimal pair in SkH , unknown to either Swanton or Sapir, does not invalidate the general validity of Sapir's observation that "pitch alternations are a primary factor in the dynamics of Haida, though it is perfectly clear that a given syllable is not uniformly high pitched or low pitched." (Sapir 1923, p. 157). On the whole, the most valuable parts of Sapir's paper seem to me to be those concerned with phonetic description, which he provides in far greater detail than does Swanton.

Haeberlin's paper addresses itself to the important issue of Haida stem formation. Referring to Swanton's

characterization of the predicate complex, he notes that

"The essential features of this analysis are that the order of these four groups of elements in the verbal theme is rigid, that a verbal element is determined in its position by belonging to one of the four groups, and that there is an inherent distinction between primary verbal elements, represented by those of the third group, and secondary ones, represented by the other three groups. Do these grammatical principles explain the complexity of the phenomena?" (Haerberlin 1923, p. 159.)

Haerberlin approaches an answer to this question by pointing out examples from Swanton's own data which seem to violate the canons set forth in the HAIL sketch. According to Haerberlin, Swanton makes no provision in his formulation for cases in which (1) a stem can appear either to the right or to the left of other stems with which it is associated; (2) bases ("themes" in Haerberlin's usage) include a nominal element; (3) elements appear to the left of classificatory morphemes ("stems" in Haerberlin's terminology) which also appear as "primary" verbs (and which, by implication, should appear only to the right of the classificatory forms, which are described by Swanton as prefixes.) This type of case includes the appearance of a locative suffix as a "primary stem" (and, in my own data, as a particle) and similar problems.

Haerberlin concludes from these considerations that

"instead of assuming different categories of elements and attributing to them definite places in the complex, it is imperative to view the situation from the broader

standpoint of the combination of stems in general... a freer view of the composition of stems is warranted. As soon as it becomes apparent that combination of nominal and verbal stems is in no essential way distinct from one of different verbal stems, then our view of the Haida verbal complex as a stem or group of stems modified by definite classes of prefixes and suffixes must change." (Haerberlin 1923, p. 162.)

Haerberlin's critique succeeds in being simultaneously insightful and misdirected. Let us consider his objections in order.

(1) As far as the lack of rigid left/right order among stems is concerned, there is no stem in SkH which can appear to the left or the right of any given stem. All Haerberlin's examples illustrate is the fact that {qa} "move" appears to the left of some roots and to the right of others. There is nothing free about the positional order of {qa} with respect to any given root. Such facts belong to the lexicon; they imply an idiosyncratic basis for ordering which is the opposite of positional freedom. Indoeuropean bristles with comparable examples, e.g. English "offshoot" vs. "brush-off."

(2) There is no reason why a derivational process cannot produce a verb stem from a noun root or stem. {-da} in any case is a suffix, not a root. A compounding of noun stem + verb stem may produce a verb stem, but this hardly invalidates the use of position classes

in an analysis.

(3) Historical processes often permit the same linguistic form to function according to the canon of more than one morphosyntactic class. Synchronically, this is irrelevant to the establishment of position classes, especially if such classes contain more than one member. A case in point is English "full," which represents the same grammatical material as the suffix -ful in "careful," or the corresponding pair "less"/ "-less" as in "careless." In a synchronic analysis of English, moreover, one might be tempted to analyze the prefix "en-" in "enable" as being identical to the suffix "-en" in "weaken," and while historically the two affixes have different sources, purely descriptive principles might necessitate the equation if no historical sources and/or opportunities for comparison existed--as they in fact do not for Haida. This is a possibility that Haeberlin does not consider--that some of the morphemes he sees as freely occurring may in fact represent at least historically distinct elements.

Yet in certain respects Haeberlin may have captured an important truth not about Haida's synchronic structure but about its history. There is every reason to be suspicious about the Haida instrumental prefixes, for example, as

Swanton presents them, since almost all of them are grammatically identical to nominal or predicate roots. The classificatory elements too seem very likely, upon careful examination, to have been roots at an earlier period (see discussion of this point in Chapter 5.) Synchronically, both prefix classes appear to be closed to further expansion, and therefore the kind of freedom necessary to explain them as simply the initial elements in compound stems does not exist; for the shape classifiers there is the additional problem that almost all of them have ceased to function as roots, much like the "cran-" in "cranberry." Historically, however, Haeberlin may be entirely justified in supposing that the prefix classes were created by Haida's well-known tendency to form compound stems.

The heart of the difficulty with Haeberlin's claims is that he did not, quite understandably, separate derivational material from inflectional. This distinction, which is absolutely critical in all Haida dialects, was overlooked by Swanton; it seems to me quite likely that a meticulous re-examination of his text collections might have led to its discovery, but no subsequent investigator undertook the task. This problem seems to have entailed another, that is, an extremely lax application of the concept "stem." Apparently anything could be a stem, regardless of its inflectional

possibilities. The causative suffix *-{da}*, for example, is described in both Swanton's work and Haeberlin's as a stem, although it never can be independently inflected. Yet "stem" was not synonymous with "morpheme," as such examples might lead one to think, since Swanton did make a distinction in his description of predicate morphology between stems and suffixes.

It is somewhat curious that both Sapir, in one of the passages from his paper quoted above, and Haeberlin, as his main hypothesis, attacked the allegedly synthetic appearance of the Haida language. Diachronic speculation almost certainly played a part in this criticism, at least on Sapir's part, for the Na-Dene hypothesis was the subject of active debate during this period and, as I have pointed out elsewhere (Levine 1976) the "classical" Na-Dene perspective required a "loose" structure for Haida vis-à-vis Athapaskan and Tlingit. Unfortunately, Sapir's and Haeberlin's reinterpretations of Swanton were the first of a number of subsequent contributions by Amerindianists in which references to Haida were based entirely upon earlier work or extremely marginal contact with the language, rather than fieldwork. At present this trend has been reversed; a number of investigators are carrying out first-hand research on different dialects and different linguistic aspects of Haida. It is not possible

to comment in detail on recent work, nor would it be fair, since much of it has been presented extremely informally, and, in many cases, only for the consideration of other Haidanists. The current scene can be summed up as follows: there are two active research initiatives devoted to Haida, apart from the one represented by this dissertation. One originates with the Alaska Native Language Center at the University of Alaska, and has been largely conducted by Jeff Leer, with some work also by Michael Krauss. The other is based in Seattle, with Carol Eastman and Robert Welsch of the University of Washington's Department of Anthropology. Both institutions are studying Alaskan dialects. It is rumored that a graduate student has done some fieldwork in Masset with that dialect, but I cannot comment on this at present. In any case, some of the work now available on the northern dialects (see, especially, Welsch 1976) appears to set forth results thoroughly comparable to those reported for SKH in the following chapters. I should prefer to withhold assessment of these efforts until they appear in a more formal presentation.

1.1.4 Information Sources for Skidegate Haida.

The research upon which this dissertation is based was initiated in February, 1972. From late February through early May I worked in Vancouver with Mrs. Gertrude Kelly,

the widow of the speaker who provided Sapir with material for his Haida phonetics article. Mrs. Kelly, although a native speaker of the Skidegate dialect, had not used Haida for communication on a daily basis for approximately sixty years. Her principal strength as an associate in this work lay in her clarity of pronunciation, so that she provided an excellent introduction to the surface phonology of SkH. However, in a number of instances Mrs. Kelly appeared uncertain of whether a velar or a uvular stop was the proper segment in certain forms. She occasionally produced a back segment apparently midway between a velar and a uvular stop, and in these cases it was difficult to know which segment to record. At a deeper level, Mrs. Kelly seemed unsure about the status of g-deletion rules, even in the post-alveodental environment where it is, for all other speaker, absolutely universal.

From June of 1972 through mid-January of the following year I worked in Skidegate with a series of speakers, starting with Solomon Wilson, who at 89 is generally regarded as among the very ablest living speakers of the Skidegate dialect, possibly the best. He was the heir of the last hereditary chief of /*ǰayna*/, a small village on an island across the Channel from Queen Charlotte City known as Maude Island. This community represented the survivors of the original population of /*čaʔaʔ*/, an island

off the west coast of Graham Island. Subsequently I worked with Mrs. Hazel Stevens, an excellent speaker in her mid-seventies, whose parents were from /tanu/, and the late Mrs. Becky Pearson, whose family originated in Cumshewa and Kaisun. Mrs. Pearson was an outstanding co-worker and my principal source of data for most of the topics referred to in this dissertation. Mrs. Pearson was first exposed to English at the age of seven; she subsequently lived on the mainland, but returned to the Charlottes when she was in her twenties and immediately resumed the use of Haida. She spent a number of years living in Masset. Any form not specifically marked otherwise has been supplied by Mrs. Pearson.

1.1.5 Linguistic Variation in Skidegate Haida

It is interesting to compare the data supplied by these speakers respectively. There is considerable variation, so much so that one is tempted to regard individual speech as manifesting sub-dialect level features. This variation ranges from shallow phonology to syntactic structure, and while there is mutual resemblance among these sub-dialects relative to the speech forms encountered in Masset, it seems to me somewhat misleading to refer to "the" Skidegate dialect. Phonological variation exists at the surface level most obviously in the vowels. Data from Mrs. Pearson reveal a much wider distribution of [e] than do any of the other speakers

with whom I worked. She also displayed significant deviation in canonical constraints on syllable shape. Morphological variation is revealed in the following data from Solomon Wilson and Becky Pearson, respectively:

/di x^wixidisλga/ "I'm becoming cold."

/ʔu kaḡasλdiga/ "It's drying out."

In both examples the morpheme $\{-s\lambda\}$, indicating something like permeation, accomplishment or progress toward a natural goal, is present in the predicate, but in Wilson's example it occurs to the right of $\{-xidi\}$ and is therefore itself an inflectional suffix (see Chapter 4.) In Becky Pearson's usage $\{-s\lambda\}$ is always found to the left of any inflectional suffixes. In this respect Wilson's use of the permeative suffix differs from all other speakers with whom I worked. Another instance of morphological variation is the distribution of $\{-g\lambda\}$ and $\{-ga\}$ in the speech of these speakers. In Becky Pearson's idiolect these forms pattern very strictly, according to the presence or non-presence of old information in the clause. In the former case, either $\{-g\lambda\}$ or $\{-ga\}$ can appear as tense/modal suffixes; in the latter case only $\{-ga\}$ may appear. This patterning is not so strictly defined in the idiolects of several other of my co-workers. For Hazel Stevens the two suffixes are often interchangeable, although the $\{-i\}$ old information anaphora suffix (see Chapter 4) is distributed as in Mrs.

Pearson's idiolect. In Solomon Wilson's idiolect $\{-i\}$ can be added to $\{-g\Lambda n\}$ regardless of the syntactic environment, while $\{-ga\}$ and $\{-g\Lambda n\}$ are, apparently, in free variation. Still another instance of morphological variation is the distribution of the inflectional suffix $\{-gi\}$, whose privileges of occurrence appear highly idiosyncratic. In Becky Pearson's idiolect $\{-gi\}$ can be concatenated with aspectual suffixes and therefore must belong to a different position class; in the speech of my other co-workers this was not the case. Syntactic diversity is present as well. In several idiolects it is possible to say

/la ga taḡasga kyah ?a/ "He's going to eat outside."

{la} third person, {ga} particle which here intransitivizes the predicate, {ta} "eat" $\{-ḡas\}$ "future"-{ga} "neutral tense/modal suffix," {kiḡ} "outside," {?a} "constituent transfer."

The freest use of this constituent order is found in Becky Pearson's idiolect, even to the point of S V O {?a} constructions:

/la qiḡagAn kaw ?a/ "He found herring spawn."

Such constructions, in which objects of predicates appear following these predicates, are forbidden in the speech of some of the Skidegate people. For Hazel Stevens, the SkH form above corresponding to "He's going outside" is, in her

words, "saying it backwards."

The scope of idiolect variation in Skidegate extends well beyond the cases cited, but its depth is not clear, nor are its origins apparent. Two factors, however, are almost certainly involved:

(1) in precontact times there were between ten and fifteen local groups inhabiting the southern Charlottes. The exact degree of contact among these groups is not known, but research into Halkomelem (Statham, 1973) suggests that linguistic diversity has less to do with frequency or infrequency of intergroup contact than with the number of exploitable habitat zones available to a population. The intensity of linguistic divergence is proportional to the number of available zones, and also to the degree of interdependence among the groups. It is thus not surprising to find that Eskimo is spoken as essentially a single language across thousands of miles, and that sub-Arctic Athapaskan and Algonkian-speaking peoples tend to display considerably less linguistic diversity than relatives living along the coast well to the south. There are striking examples of the same sort of phenomenon outside North America. We might, therefore, expect to find suggestions of considerable intergroup variation over an area of the size occupied by the original southern dialects of Haida.

(2) Haida is moribund in all dialects. There is ample

evidence that under such conditions languages can undergo profound change in an extremely short time. Nancy Dorian notes that her study of Scots Gaelic in three villages "makes abundantly clear... that the last speakers of a dying language can be a very misleading source of information about the grammar (and presumably also phonology and semantics) of the language they represent...." She subsequently notes that "whenever a grammar is written or a protolanguage reconstructed on the basis of materials gathered from a few last speakers,... the stage of the language represented by those speakers is markedly deviant even in terms of the recent history of the language." (Dorian 1973, pp. 437-438.) John Dumm has illustrated the same process in the context of the Northwest Coast (Dumm 1974.) In the case of Haida, none of the Haida speakers with whom I worked was monolingual, and I seriously doubt whether there are any SkH speakers now living who are totally monolingual. In such a situation there will inevitably be pressure on a speaker's Haida usage from English rules and categories. It would appear that certain systems have been subject to major alteration in one speaker's idiolect while other systems have undergone change for other speakers. Thus the old information anaphora system has been relatively well preserved in Becky Pearson's idiolect, while the shape-

classificatory system has, in practice, undergone some simplification. Exactly the reverse is true for Hazel Stevens. For both speakers, the shape system has become weakened in the formation of numeral predicates. In some instances the informants apply shape classificatory elements to numerals used in counting various objects, according to the shape category to which these objects belong. In most case, however, the application of shape elements to numerals is dispensed with. Earlier studies, such as Harrison's and Swanton's, make clear that even comparatively recently all objects were shape-classificatory with respect to numeration. Unfortunately, the time depth of Haida research is insufficient to provide a baseline for estimating the relative attenuation of the various dialects and sub-dialects.

1.2 Ethnographic Background.

The Haida people who provided the data for this dissertation live on the Queen Charlotte Islands, a large archipelago approximately seventy miles off the British Columbia mainland. The name Haida is the English rendering of the native word /*ħayda*/ or /*ħaydağa*/, applied to members of the group at present, but originally meaning simply "person." The name itself does not appear to be analyzable, although several speakers have supplied what seem to be folk etymologies. In one instance the name

was linked to the predicate /*ǰayniŋa*/ "(be) alive."
 The /*ǰa*/ in the second version of the name given above
 was in this instance identified with the suffix *-{ǰa}*
 which often marks a possessed form. The speaker who
 provided this explanation suggested that /*ǰaydaǰa*/
 can be translated "those possessing life." This
 explanation, while plausible, is undermined by the
 lack of any other cases of /*n/~d*/; nonetheless,
 it cannot be ruled out.

At present there are small Haida communities in
 southeastern Alaska, representing population movements
 from the northern groups on the Charlottes some time
 within the last three hundred years. For the most
 part the Haida are still living on the Charlottes,
 now occupying only two villages, Skidegate at the south-
 ern end of Graham Island and Masset at the northern
 end. Considerable differences exist between the respective
 dialects of the two villages, at least in their phonologies
 and lexical inventories. Unfortunately there are insufficient
 data currently available for the Masset dialect to judge
 the degree to which it has diverged grammatically from
 the Skidegate dialect. It should be noted that in all
 likelihood "the" Masset dialect is in fact a dialect
 mosaic, as SkH is, since Masset was the northern refugium

for survivors of the epidemics of the middle and late 1800's, as Skidegate was the southern refugium.

1.2.1. Precontact Haida Society

1.2.1.1. Social Organization

Prior to extensive contact with European society, the Haida were distributed among a large number of villages on both large islands, Graham and Moresby, and also a number of smaller islands (see Map 1.) Within each village, the residents belonged to matrilineages, with each lineage occupying its own large wooden house. Residence appears to have been avunculocal, with sons leaving their parents' residence more or less permanently at adolescence. Rosman and Rubel (1971), in their comprehensive review of data pertaining to Northwest Coast social organization, present convincing evidence that a rule of patrilateral cross-cousin marriage was in force among both the Haida and the Tlingit, linking each generation with two others in any given generation, but with a complete reversal in the direction of exchanges between related lineages from one generation to the next.

Superimposed upon the pattern of cross-cousin marriage was a moiety system which assigned lineages to either /*xuya*/ "Raven" or /*gud*/ "Eagle" moieties. Rosman and Rubel explain this as a consequence of the cross-cousin marriage

rule: since the two lineages which marry into a third lineage are paired as rivals, with certain symbols of negative affect exchanged between them at potlatches, but are each linked with the third as an ally, a minimum of four groups is necessary to avoid ambivalent structural relations, and thus a de facto moiety situation is created. The moieties were thus epiphenomenal originally; ironically, they appear to have persisted as cultural categories far more tenaciously than the marriage rule which generated them.

1.2.1.2. Economic Activity

Resources, both material and non-material, were owned by lineages. Ideologically there seems to have been only small distinction made between these two forms of wealth. Names, crests, songs, myths and other forms of intangible property were conventionally fixed and finite; the seasonal recurrence of fish and wild food on which the Haida subsisted seems to have led to the conception of material wealth as limited, although non-exhaustible. Thus, the salmon which ran up the various creeks and inlets of the Charlottes in any given year were regarded as identical to the salmon which had gone up the same-stream-in-all the previous years. This belief represents an extension of the Haida conception of reincarnation into the natural world.

The Haida fished five different species of salmon, as well as black cod, halibut, red snapper and other denizens

of the northern coastal waters. They also gathered clams, cockles, abalone, crab, mussels, sea urchins and other shellfish. These resources were and are unequally distributed on the Charlottes, so that different areas exploited different resources. This situation persists in the modern period (see, for example, the text examined in Chapter 7.) It is probable that a considerable trade existed in the precontact period, since the area of occupation and resource exploitation was far larger (and included the now-uninhabited west coast.) Seasonal fluctuations in production were probably part of the economy, if the patterns hypothesized by Suttles for the Coast Salish (1960) and by Piddocke for the Kwakwaka-speaking peoples (1962) were general over the Northwest Coast. Such may well have been the case for the Haida, because the climate in this area of the Pacific is in large measure determined by the movements of the Japanese Current, which runs off the west coast of the Charlottes. When the current runs further out at sea, the winters on the Charlottes are colder, although only rarely severe. The drop in temperature affects the micro-environments of shallow water in which the salmon deposit their eggs; if the drop is sufficient, the population of a creek will be seriously reduced for one season. The somewhat uncertain basis of resource exploitation in this type of environment makes

it likely that groups maintained some degree of contact with each other for economic reasons. The actual degree of contact is unclear; it is not easy to assess the depth of the communication network among the aboriginal communities. This question has a direct bearing on the problem of dialect and idiolect variation discussed in 1.1.5.

The Haida exploited a variety of berries and other wild plants, some of which were consumed as food, with others used as medicines (see Turner, 1974, for an insightful presentation of Haida ethnobotany.) They also utilized cedar wood for houses and cedar bark for blankets (see Swanton 1905 for discussion of material technology.)

In addition to the network of economic exchange the Haida maintained among themselves, they were involved with the mainland peoples along the entire Coast, as well as the inhabitants of Vancouver Island, both as trade partners and as predators. Certain items, such as oulachen oil, are not available on the Charlottes; it was necessary for the Haida to barter for them. The Haida also raided for slaves and, in the postcontact period, for furs. Militarily the Haida held a considerable advantage over other Northwestern groups, since they alone had the navigational experience--acquired out of necessity--to repeatedly cross and re-cross the exceedingly dangerous

Hecate Straits, and therefore were almost immune from retaliatory raids by members of other groups.

1.2.2. Contact and its Effects

The first extensive contacts with European society the Haidas experienced were the result of the maritime fur trade which began in the last quarter of the eighteenth century. By and large this contact was amicable (though the community on Anthony Island was a major exception to this pattern; see Duff and Kew 1973.) The SkH name for "white man" is /yads řaydařa/, the first word of which is a contraction of /hiřiyacı/ "iron, steel," while /řaydařa/ discussed above, originally applied generically to human beings. The Haida, in effect, characterized the Europeans on the basis of the economic contact between the two societies, for iron was an important trade item in the early period.

In the century following the first contact with the Europeans, many members of Haida groups moved down to Victoria, which was at that time the major European settlement in British Columbia, and found employment in the city. This migration itself probably did not affect the population of the Charlottes radically; indeed, it is unlikely that there were any abrupt changes in Haida settlement patterns, economic relations or social organization during the first half of the century, although the inflow of British currency may have

somewhat inflated indigenous standards of wealth.

Serious disruption in the postcontact demography of the Queen Charlottes resulted from the smallpox epidemics which began in Victoria in 1862 and moved rapidly up the coast. The affected Haidas living in the south were forced to return to the Charlottes by authorities who feared that they would be vectors of the disease in the Victoria area. For the next several decades small pox decimated Haida villages. As populations in local communities decreased, village sites were abandoned and survivors in the southern parts of the Charlottes converged upon Skidegate. This convergence did not occur at the same time from all sources, but seems to have been complete by around 1825.

This general decrease in population, and the accompanying breakdown of productive social units, resulted in a serious decline in the Haida's standard of living. The growth of commercial fishing as a primary industry on the British Columbia coast may well have affected indigenous food-gathering adversely, although representing an option which provided the Haida with ready cash. Commercial fishing and cannery work was probably the principal source of income for the Haida in the early twentieth century, but the standard of living remained low enough that diseases such as tuberculosis exacted a heavy toll in Skidegate. The growth of the logging

industry on the northern coast greatly strengthened the economic situation of the Skidegate people; for geographical reasons it had less effect on the northern population on Graham Island.

As the Haida became integrated into the European economy, their lives were increasingly controlled by the dictates of the Canadian Federal government and the major Christian Churches of British Columbia. Secular and religious agencies both did their best to suppress traditional cultural practices such as matriliney, multi-heath households, patrilineal cross-cousin marriage and the use of Haida for ordinary communication. It is not uncommon to hear stories from older people on the Charlottes of beatings received as children for speaking Haida. A systematic, and in many respects successful, effort was exerted by church-run schools to abolish Haida language and non-linguistic culture (see Levine and Cooper 1976 for documentation of this process as a province-wide phenomenon affecting most Native groups.) The somewhat pathetic efforts by the Church in recent years to rectify this policy only serves to underline the effectiveness of its earlier destructive practice.

1.2.3 The Modern Situation

The Haida, unlike many other aboriginal groups in

British Columbia, eventually succeeded in restoring a measure of prosperity to their lives, principally through logging and fishing work. A number of people living in the village own their own fishing vessels and nets. In addition log salvage, fisheries patrol work and retailing provide income for the village. The brilliant career of Haida art has resumed in the form of commercial enterprises, with gold, silver and argillite carving replacing, for the most part, the large-scale woodwork which was the most conspicuous expression of Haida aesthetics in the nineteenth century. So successful have these efforts been that Skidegate is presently among the most prosperous communities in British Columbia regardless of ethnic composition.

Concomitant with this increased standard of living has been a resurgence of the Skidegate band's population. Unfortunately the same cannot be said for the Haida speech community, since children do not learn the language. It is probably optimistic to suppose that more than forty-five or fifty speakers of SkH are alive; these speakers are, moreover, with one or two exceptions, in their mid-sixties or older.

Intermarriage between the Haida and non-Haida populations around Skidegate has been frequent. In general the standard of living in Skidegate is quite comparable to that of Queen

Charlotte City, where the bulk of the White population lives. There is a certain amount of integration of the two groups in the workplace, especially in the logging industry. The creation of both affinal and vocational links between the Native and White communities on the southern end of Graham Island has resulted in a considerably less tense situation than one encounters elsewhere in the Northwest. There are, to be sure, elements of mutual antagonism, since the Skidegate people still regard Whites as interlopers in what was originally their domain, and are actively involved in the Land Claims litigation. Still, social tension nowhere appears to be extremely strong amongst any of the sub-groups living on this part of the Charlottes. As long as the economy of the Charlottes remains stable and no major demographic changes occur, this relatively stable set of relations seems likely to continue.

1.3 Research Goals

As I have intimated at the beginning of this chapter, I have avoided extended consideration of those areas of Haida grammar which would require rather abstract formulations. I feel no antagonism at all to theoretical aspects of linguistic inquiry; my contention is, however, that at present not enough is known about the Skidegate dialect to give such inquiry much substance. We do not currently

possess in linguistics a systematic and empirically sound theory of universals to act as a grid against which to plot the structure of any given language. I am aware that certain other Northwesternists may object to this statement, but the issue, as I choose to see it, is a matter of empirical soundness even more than systematicity. Theories of linguistic universals have been put forward with a few sentences from each of at most a handful of languages as documentation. There is even the theoretical question of whether it is possible to verify the non-tautological status of suggestions about "what every language has."

Having said this, I must explain why I have used certain elements of modern syntactic vocabulary in some of my comments about Skidegate structure, such as NP. To some extent, the constructions I have labelled NP in Haida correspond, within Haida, to the types of grammatical structures conventionally described as NP in English. In some instances, such as postpositional phrases, one can apply more general formulations (such as Chomsky's A-over-A constraint) to the specifically Haida structures. My goal is to reveal something of the fabric of Haida, and I think that this goal is aided by the use of such syntactic analogies wherever possible. If I have not gone further in my syntactic characterizations, it is because I have not been able to

support any analogy further. Partly this is due, of course, to my lack of adequate knowledge of Haida, and partly to imprecise definitions in the literature of the features of some of the items used to label syntactic structures via, for example, tree-structures.

I do not believe that Haida has been well understood in past research, the insightful work of Keen, Swanton and Sapir notwithstanding. Much of the problem is simply that not enough research was done. Swanton, relying almost entirely on texts for his data, doubtless missed the sort of information that would emerge, for instance, in conversation. Sapir's firsthand work with Haida was, as noted above, marginal. In order to understand a language even basically much more investigation is required than has been accorded to Haida so far. The same can be said for other languages in the Northwest which are vaguely felt to have been "done," merely because a few grammars of them have been written. The career of English syntactic study during the past twenty years has revealed tremendous numbers of previously unrecognized problems, if few enduring solutions; yet English had been exhaustively studied for centuries previous to the publication of Syntactic Structures. In the case of Haida, we know far less of its structure than was known of English or French in the eighteenth century; we are only beginning to know what the facts of Haida are. Without knowing such facts, speculations on Haida prehistory

must remain vacuous; elsewhere (Levine 1976) I have detailed the deficiencies of comparative work involving Haida, and noted that these deficiencies, when not the result of serious misinterpretation of the data, were the result of inadequate knowledge. The history of Na-Dene speculation should make us not unduly cautious in our diachronic investigations, but, rather, more intensive and comprehensive in our synchronic probing.

This work, then, is offered as part of the beginnings of a revival of interest in Haida as a language, independent of the Na-Dene issue. There is no question here of being exhaustive; much of importance has doubtless been omitted. Still, it is a start, and will, I hope, stimulate interest in Haida, even to the extent of persuading linguists to consider further fieldwork with the language.

Chapter 2 Phonology

2.1 Skidegate Phonology: a summary.

The Skidegate dialect contains a well-developed consonant system, although one that is rather small by Northwestern standards, and a five-vowel system, containing one vowel whose systemic status is problematic. The consonants are divisible into stops, representing the maximum degree of obstruction to air flow through the vocal tract; fricatives, produced with a less absolute degree of closure, enabling air to flow through past the point of articulation; and sonorants, in which there is minimum obstruction to the air flow. The difference between classes of segments within each of these major categories is determined by the shape of the oral cavity; the same is true among the vowels. In addition to the segmental contrasts among consonants and vowels there are suprasegmental distinctions of stress and pitch, though neither of these, in itself, appears to be systemically phonemic. Stress is perhaps best characterized for Haida as the relative loudness of the syllable nucleus, while pitch, whose acoustic parameter is frequency, is either high or low.

In this chapter I present a synopsis of SkH phonology, consisting of two parts: a description of the phonemes of

the language and their possible combinations, where by phonemes I mean contrastive phonological segments defined strictly on the basis of grammatical information, and a statement of the major phonological rules of the language. These rules relate contrastive units defined on the basis of both phonetic and grammatical information to units at the phonemic level, or in some instances at still shallower levels. For Skidegate, these rules are fairly straightforward and do not possess extreme depth, yet the ordering convention is clearly required in order to account for the data relatively economically.

2.2 Phonemes and their arrangements

2.2.1 The Phoneme Inventory

The following chart gives the phonemic system of Skidegate:

	Consonants						
	bilabials	alveodentals		velar	uvular	glottal	
		plain	affricate				
<u>Stops</u>		-lat	+lat				
-tense	b	d	ɟ	λ	g	g̃	ʔ
+tense		t	c	ʔ	k	q	
ejective		t̥	c̥	ʔ̥	k̥	q̥	
<u>Fricatives</u>			s	ʃ	x	χ	h
<u>Sonorants</u>							
+nasal	m	n			ŋ		
-nasal	w		y	l			

		Vowels		
		front	mid	back
high		i		u
mid		e	ʌ	
low			a	# (vowel truncation)

Pitch: high and low.

Stress: primary, secondary and unstressed.

Although it is not specifically noted on this chart, /j/ and /y/ are to be described as palatal at some level of representation in terms of their low-level phonological effects on following /a/.

2.2.2 Consonants

2.2.2.1 Stops

Stops are divisible into three types on the basis of the nature of the air stream which produces them and the configuration of the vocal tract while they are being produced. Ejectives are made by the release of air trapped and held under pressure between the point of articulation in the oral cavity (formed by the tongue for all ejectives in Skidegate) and the larynx with glottis completely closed, forced upward to compress the trapped air. They are quite loud, relative to e.g. the ejective segments in Wakashan or Salishan languages. Non-tense stops are articulated with a relatively lax vocal tract and have

the following values: voiceless after immediately preceding fricatives, but otherwise voiced pre-vocalically. Non-tense stops are voiceless in syllable final position. Tense stops are produced with a relatively tense vocal tract and are always aspirated and voiceless; they may never appear in syllable final position. In effect this analysis assigns contrastiveness to aspiration, rather than voicing, a solution which seems preferable on the basis of the following points: (1) there is at least one environment in which contrast is maintained solely by aspiration, that is, /#_{syl}fricative __. To assume that voicing was contrastive and aspiration redundant would make the contrastive value of aspiration in this environment difficult to explain straightforwardly. (2) In all northern dialects of Haida, a pharyngeal stop /ʕ/ corresponds to Skidegate /ǵ/. Phonetically this stop /ʕ/ is voiceless and unaspirated. In terms of the analysis I offer, the northern stop is -tense, and so the -tense Skidegate stop corresponds to the -tense northern stop. If, however, the primary contrast is described in terms of voicing, the +voice Skidegate stop corresponds to the -voice northern stop. This correspondence strikes me as being far less natural (in terms of the ±voice analysis) than would the correspondence Sk q: n. ʕ, which never occurs; Sk q: n. q in all cases. Hence the aspiration description of the contrast accounts for this correspondence more naturally than the voice

description.

Stops are articulated in the following vocal tract positions: bilabial, alveodental, velar, uvular and glottal. The first articulatory position, as the chart shows, is defective relative to the others: there is only one bilabial stop, /b/, and it is highly restricted with respect to both syllable structure (it occurs only in syllable-final position in monomorphemes) and grammatical form-class.

2.2.2.1.1 Bilabials

The bilabial stop, /b/, is produced by bringing the upper and lower lips together to form the obstruction to air flow through the mouth. Its sole appearance in medial position in a monomorphemic form is in /ʔaba/ "to chew food for a child or old person," which may be a borrowing. Forms such as /sabəli/ "bread" or /bid/ "dime" are transparent borrowings.

2.2.2.1.2 Alveodentals

2.2.2.1.2.1 Plain Stops

The plain alveodental stops are /d/, /t/ and /t̪/. All are produced by bringing the apex of the tongue into contact with the alveolar ridge just behind the front teeth.

Examples

/d/: /dalʌŋ/ "second person plural."

/dʌws/ "cat"

/dasgid/ "push"

/gud/ "eagle"

/hawid/ "hurry!"

/sdiŋ/ "two"

/ɪdan/ "blue huckleberry"

/t/: /tan/ "black bear"

/tada/ "cold (outside), year"

/taju/ "wind"

/stiway/ "the sea urchin(s)"

/ɪtaxwi/ "friend"

/t̥/: /t̥alʌŋ/ "first person plural (active)"

/t̥ik/ "wet (on the surface)"

/st̥i/ "sick"

/ɪtigʌŋ/ "think something is insufficient."

2.2.2.1.2.2 Affricates

The non-lateral affricates are /t̥j/, /c/ and /t̥ʃ/; the lateral affricates are /ɬ/, /ɬ̥/ and /t̥ɬ/. /c/ has two allophones, [c^h], produced by a protracted release of the alveodental obstruction during which the apex of the tongue moves slightly back toward the edge of the alveolar ridge before the closure is completely released, and [c̥^h], during which the mid-part of the tongue rises toward the palate to produce a partial obstruction even as the

alveodental obstruction is released. [tʰ] generally appears /__i, though there is actually somewhat freer variation than this statement indicates. There is no allophony among the other affricates. No affricate phoneme may appear in syllable-final position.

The infrequency of syllable-initial fricative + affricate consonant clusters is striking. Such clusters do exist, e.g. /sʌʌgu/ "land otter," /sʌʌn/ "needle," but they are restricted to a very few instances of s+lateral affricated; even here I am not aware of any cases in which the lateral affricate is /ʎ/. It is possible that the explanation lies in the fact that both the affricates and the fricatives are alveodental and that a principal of dissimilation is operating. Another factor possible is suggested by the alternation of /ʎ/ and /l/ following s, namely, that at some level of Haida phonology native speakers regard affricates as sequences of segments, even though, in terms of the syllable canon, the affricates are single segments. /d/ followed by epenthetic /ʎ/ produces a phonetic entity in no way distinguishable from /ʎ/, so that in at least in some sense stop + fricative sequences are equated with affricates. If affricates are to some extent analyzed by native speakers as sequences, the syllable canon would tend to minimize the frequency of fricative + affricate clusters.

Examples

/j/: /jaʔad/ "woman"

/jiŋa/ "far away"

/c/: /cina/ "fish"

/ciχwa/ ~ /ciχu/ "beach, seafood"

/č/: /čanu/ "fire, firewood"

/čiğa/ "move"

/λ/: /λaǰʷi/ "(a person) fall"

/sλaɣu/ "land otter"

/ʎ/: /ʎaɣa/ "ground, place"

/ʎan/ "stop"

/ʎ/: /ʎadǰʷi/ "(something spread out) fall"

2.2.2.1.3 Velars

Velars are produced by bringing the mid-part of the tongue into contact with the roof of the mouth at a point very close to the point of articulation for velars in English. They display a very small degree of fronting preceding /y/ or /i/.

Examples

/g/: /gina/ "something"

/gʌm/ negative particle

/ɣgaǰu/ "branching structure"

/sgway/ "back"

/k/: /kuga/ "cook"
 /kucid/ "worry"
 /kil/ "language, voice"
 /skažu/ "small and round"

/k': /k'aw/ "herring spawn"
 /k'ina/ "warm, hot"
 /k'kin/ "woods"
 /sk'Alju/ "boil"

2.2.2.1.4 Uvulars

The uvulars are produced by retracting the tongue so that the very back comes into contact with the uvula. There is never any confusion as to whether one is hearing a velar or a uvular sound, even when labialization is present. /ǧ/ is the only back stop which displays significant allophony; in word initial position /ǧ/ is pronounced [ǧ]; elsewhere it is pronounced variably [ǧ]~[ǧ̣], with the latter phone appearing particularly often intervocalically. So common is [ǧ̣] that Boas often transcribed it r, apparently identifying it with the French uvular fricative.

Examples

/ǧ/: /ǧAnλA/ "water"
 /ǧan/ "berry"
 /sǧana/ "killer whale, supernatural power"
 /ǧga/ "rock"

/q/: /qaw/ "egg"

/qAlga/ "ice, glass, bottle"

/squda/ "hit (once, with fist)"

/sqAl/ "shoulder"

/q̥/: /q̥axada/ "dogfish"

/q̥aʒu/ "get up"

/sq̥aŋʔu/ "stick"

/sq̥ad/ "recognize"

/ʔq̥ayʔAn/ "comb"

2.2.2.1.5 Glottal

Glottal stop, /ʔ/, has privileges of occurrence identical to the back stops, and in terms of both distributional restrictions and participation in phonological rules appears to group naturally with the latter, rather than with the semivowels and /h/, recent theoretical descriptions notwithstanding (e.g. Chomsky and Halle 1968.)

Examples

/ʔ/: /ʔaŋa/ "yes"

/ʔina/ "be born, grow"

/ʔʔanʒu/ "stupid"

/ʔumsʔAd/ "know"

2.2.2.2 Fricatives

The fricatives in the Skidegate dialect occur in the same articulatory positions described for the stops, with the

exception of the bilabial position. All are voiceless.

2.2.2.2.1 Alveodental

The alveodental fricatives are /s/ and /ʃ/. /s/ is produced by contact between the apex of the tongue and the alveolar ridge, with air forced through the point of contact; it has the invariant phonetic form [s]. /ʃ/ is made with the same point of articulation, but the air is forced around this point. A very slight portion of the front of the tongue behind the apex rests against the roof of the mouth in the articulation of [ʃ], the sole phonetic representative of /ʃ/.

Examples

/s/: /su/ "lake"

/sʒana/ "killer whale, supernatural power"

/ʒadkadas/ "jump (once)"

/ʃ/: /ʃa/ "first person singular (active)"

/ʃʒa/ "rock"

/ʃʒaʃ/ "black, hue"

2.2.2.2.2 Velar

The velar fricative is /x/. It occurs relatively infrequently.

Examples

/x/: /xil/ "leaf, medicine"

/xaya/ "sunlight"

/xyay/ "arm"

2.2.2.2.3 Uvular

The uvular fricative is /χ/.

Examples

/χ/: /χa/ "dog"

/χaχada/ "dogfish"

/χyu/ "rib"

2.2.2.2.4 Glottal

The glottal fricative is /h/. It differs in its distribution from the other back fricatives in that it regularly appears in all Skidegate idiolects in syllable final position, on the one hand, and never precedes /y/ or /w/, on the other.

Examples

/h/: /hawid/ "hurry"

/huyad/ "today"

/kyah/ "outside"

2.2.2.3 Sonorants

2.2.2.3.1 Nasal Sonorants

The nasal sonorants are /m/, /n/ and /ŋ/. /m/ has a highly restricted distribution relative to

the other two members of this class: no indigenous Skidegate form has word initial /m/. In this respect, as well as in its general infrequency, /m/ parallels the distributional peculiarities of /b/.

Examples

/m/: /tʌm/ "louse"

/gʌm/ "negative"

/n/: /tan/ "bear"

/niʔ/ "drink"

/ŋ/: /ŋal/ "seaweed"

/qiŋ/ "see"

2.2.2.3.2 Oral Sonorants

Oral sonorants are always laryngealized immediately following word or morpheme boundary.

2.2.2.3.2.1 Lateral Sonorants

/l/ is the only lateral sonorant. It is occasionally pronounced with a markedly dark quality when it occurs as the final segment in a syllable containing /ǰ/.

Examples

/ŋalay/ "the seaweed"

/kil/ "voice"

2.2.2.3.2.2 Semivowels

The two semivowels are /w/ and /y/. Their distribution is

considered further below in relation to the syllable canon.

Examples

/w/: /kʌw/ "cold (inanimate)"

 /kiway/ "the clam(s)"

/y/: /tay/ "lie down"

 /huyad/ "today"

2.2.3 Vowels

It does not appear particularly realistic to refer to "the" Skidegate vowel system. Somewhat different sets of distinctions are maintained between different idiolects, though Skidegate speakers resemble each other in their vowel systems far more than any of them resembles any Masset or Alaskan Haida speaker. Insofar as one can discuss a "basic" Skidegate system it is that presented in the chart given at the beginning of this chapter. However, one speaker does maintain a distinction between [i] and [I] (a distinction, so far as I am aware, restricted to a single minimal pair.) For all other speakers with whom I worked [i] and [I] are allophones of the phoneme /i/. It should be noted, however, that in the northern dialects of Haida a phonemic distinction appears to exist between [i] and [I], and between [u] and [U] (see Welsch 1976, p.289.) The vowel /e/, which ranges in phonetic quality between [e] and [ɛ], appears extremely infrequently, and

then almost invariably /y. /e/ often appears in contractions where one would have expected /a/; thus {la}{gi} "to him" contracts to /ley/. There is in fact only one form in Skidegate of indigenous origin where /e/ appears before a segment other than /y/: the number "five," / $\lambda e\dot{\lambda}\Lambda$ /. It is possible that this form was at one time * $\lambda ey\dot{\lambda}\Lambda$, for while Swanton records this word as *Leiḥ*, he transcribes the borrowed Tlingit form /*yeḥ*/ "Raven (mythological name)" as *yeḥ*. The fact that he represented the vocalic nucleus of the form for "five" as *ei*, rather than simply *e* as in the Tlingit loan-word, may indicate that the form he heard did contain /y/ following the /e/. In such a case it would have been entirely consistent with the rest of his transcriptional practice for Swanton to record this /y/ as *i*. If such were the case, it would indicate that as of only a few generations ago /e/ was restricted in its distribution to /y environments absolutely. Such a distribution would clearly suggest that some sort of conditioning is responsible for /e/, and that, given a correct interpretation of underlying phonological forms, /e/ might be derivable in all its occurrences from some other segment, most likely a.

The vowels exhibit considerable allophony. /i/ and /u/ have the following phonetic shapes: respectively [i] and

[u] in open syllables, [I] and [U] in syllables closed by a sonorant, and [i]~[I] and [u]~[U] in syllables closed by a non-sonorant. /a/ has a markedly fronted form following palatal segments, and is slightly backed following /ǰ/.

Although a demonstrable phonemic difference exists between /ʌ/ and /a/, their distribution in open syllables exactly parallels that of the peripheral allophones of /i/ and /u/ vis-à-vis the non-peripheral allophones: just as only [i] and [u] appear in open syllables, so only /a/ appears in this context. Except for /l/, any C_{lat} + /ʌ/ will have the form [Cəl]. Thus /ʌway/ "the boat" is phonetically /ʌəlway/. The sequence /lʌl/ is phonetically [ləl]; /lʌ/ is phonetically /ʔəl/.

A phenomenon previously undescribed for Haida I have designated vowel truncation. Under certain circumstances (predictable, for the most part, if grammatical information is taken into account) /a/ becomes voiceless soon after phonation begins. Swanton appears to have recorded this process but confused /#/ with the glottal stop, probably on account of the abruptness with which voicing sometimes terminates during truncation. At least one minimal pair exists: [sʰta] "foot," [sʰta#] "full," where a# is a unit symbol representing the truncated vowel. It is an arbitrary choice whether to set up a truncated versus a non-truncated vowel as two separate phonemes, or to isolate truncation as

a single segment with a very limited distribution, but a choice must be made if one adheres to a phonemic level of phonological representation. I suggest that the element # be accorded phonemic status as a separate element.

2.2.4 Suprasegmental phenomena

Suprasegmental features in SkH are at present very poorly understood. Phonetically there are two degrees of pitch--high and low--and three degrees of stress--primary, secondary and unstressed. The essential problem for explanation is whether one or both of these suprasegmental features is inherent in syllables or predictable by rule. In this section I cannot attempt to do more than briefly note what seems to me a reasonable perspective for further investigation.

The following types of facts must be accounted for in any theory of Skidegate supersegmental phonology:

(1) In at least one instance, pitch is the basis of a phonemic distinction between forms: [qíx̄a] "find" vs. [qíx̄a], "look for, shop around," where a bar over a syllable indicates high pitch and a bar below the syllable marks low pitch. Mrs. Pearson, who provided this pair, was very insistent that the two words were distinct, and consistently distinguished them by the glosses given on the basis of pitch alone.

(2) In a number of instances, pitch and stress appear to have a certain functional status in combination with each other:

[gudáyū ʔíj̄i] "It's the box."

[gudáyū ʔíj̄i] "It's the eagle."

[f̄a ga t̄aḡasga] "I will eat."

[f̄a ga t̄aḡasga] "I'll be on my way to eat."

(3) In most other instances, neither pitch nor stress plays an obvious role in distinguishing forms. In texts, rapidly spoken conversation and other types of ordinary discourse, the syllables are for the most part pronounced at a single level of pitch. In the first of the above examples, the final syllable in [gudáyū] may bear either high or low pitch. Monosyllables are all pronounced at the same level of pitch. In very few instances does mispronunciation of suprasegmental features interfere with intelligibility.

(4) Pitch and stress alternations are extremely common:

[f̄a ga t̄aga] "I'm eating."

[f̄əl t̄aga] "I'm eating (it)."

where {f̄a} "first person singular (active)" appears alternately with secondary stress and high pitch, and unstressed with low pitch.

(5) However, the {f̄a} root "eat" in the above examples, and several suffixes, notably the evidential {-ga}, "middle" {-ga}, and habitual/periodic {-gaŋ} are always pronounced with high pitch and primary stress.

(6) There is no clear connection between the way in which a word is pronounced in isolation and the way it appears in a sentence. Thus:

[kájú] "sing."

[kájuwáy lágá]~[kájuwáy lágá] "The singing's good."

Clearly SkH is not a tone language, insofar as this term applies to languages which possess inherent tone assigned to every syllable (e.g., Chinese, Mazateco). On the other hand, SkH is not a language in which pitch and stress are functions purely of syntax/discourse structure, or of other aspects of the phonology (as with pitch in Swedish.) Instead, I would suggest that in SkH, for any syllable, one of the following four conditions applies:

- (a) underlying pitch and stress are both specified;
- (b) underlying pitch is specified;
- (c) underlying stress is specified;
- (d) no underlying value for either suprasegmental feature is specified.

Where neither pitch nor stress are supplied in the underlying form of a word, the phonetic details of these features are supplied by assignment of the word to one of a very limited number of suprasegmental position classes. Thus, for one syllable words there is only one class: all monosyllabic words are pronounced equally loudly and at the

same level of pitch. For two syllable words, the following classes exist:

(1) first syllable: $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{high pitch} \\ \text{stress} \end{array} \right)$, second syllable: $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{low pitch} \\ \text{unstressed} \end{array} \right)$

(2) first syllable: $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{low pitch} \\ \text{stress} \end{array} \right)$, second syllable: $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{high pitch} \\ \text{stress} \end{array} \right)$

(3) first syllable: $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{low pitch} \\ \text{stress} \end{array} \right)$, second syllable: $\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{low pitch} \\ \text{stress} \end{array} \right)$

I am unable to provide the inventory of classes for three or more syllable words on the basis of my present corpus.

It should be noted that (1)-(3) above represent the possibilities for monomorphemic words. Inflected one-syllable roots, where these can appear in isolation, all belong to class (1).

At more complex grammatical levels, unspecified values for pitch and stress are determined by rule. I cannot provide these rules; their formulation to some extent depends upon exact description of the phrase structure rules of SKH clauses which, as noted earlier, is not possible at this stage of our understanding. One very important rule which applies above the word level may be stated, however: all syllables, whether assigned underlying pitch or not, are low-pitched utterance finally; e.g.

[tə́l t̄agaḡh̄n] "I ate it (second hand information)."

[t̄a gwá t̄aga] "Did I eat it?"

The value of this model, limited and sketchy as it is, is that it allows us to explain how it is possible for

pitch and pitch/stress minimal pairs to exist and yet, at the same time, for suprasegmental contrasts to be "levelled out" over long stretches of discourse and to have only marginal importance in determining the intelligibility of utterances. In most cases the SkH syllable is unspecified for either pitch or stress, and since syntactic structure and conversational speed are both factored into the eventual determination of the suprasegmental features in pronunciation, the articulation of a syntactically correct utterance relatively rapidly will enable the hearer to overlook many, if not most, of the prosodic errors. This is not to say that such errors are ignored. Mrs. Pearson at one point indicated that my Haida was presentable "except for your accent." This in itself, however, reinforces the impression of pitch and stress as being relatively minor aspects of SkH so far as intelligibility is concerned. On the other hand, an error in pronouncing pitch and/or stress in forms such as $-\{g\Lambda\eta\}$ "habitual/periodic," which has inherent specification for pitch and stress, resulted in incomprehension of the utterance by the hearer.

The model of suprasegmental phonology outlined here is highly tentative. The nature of the data is so difficult that a disproportionately large amount of time, relative to the rest of the phonology, would be required

to assemble sufficient evidence for a complete solution.
Hence I have had to limit the treatment of the suprasegmental phonology to sketching the framework I propose for future investigation.

2.2.5 Minimal pairs

The following are minimal or near minimal pairs corroborating the phonemic distinctions proposed above.

/t/: /d/ [tʌw] "oil"

[dʌws] "cat"

/t/: /t̥/ [taǰʊn] "spring salmon"

[t̥aǰʊn] "feather"

/d/: /t̥/ [daʌŋ] "you (plural)"

[t̥aʌŋ] "first person plural (active)"

/t/: /g/ [tʌw] "oil"

[gʌw] "lost"

/t/: /k/ [tiː] "(someone's) tea"

[kiǰa] "meat, name"

/t/: /k̥/ [tʌw] "oil"

[k̥ʌw] "cold (inanimate)"

/t̥/: /g/ [t̥ʌm] "louse"

[gʌm] "negative"

/d/: /k/ [diǰa] "mine"

[kiǰa] "name, meat"

/d/: /k̥/ [dʌws] "cat" / [k̥ʌws] "cold (dependent pred.)"

- /d/: /g/ [da] "second person singular (active)"
[ga] "some"
- /d/: /ǵ/ [dʌn] "second person singular (neuter)"
[ǵʌn] "for"
- /d/: /q/ [da] "second person singular (active)"
[qa] "go"
- /d/: /ǵ/ [da] "second person singular (active)"
[ǵa] "harpoon"
- /t/: /ǵ/ [ta] "eat"
[ǵa] "to, amongst"
- /t/: /q/ [ta] "eat"
[qa] "go"
- /t/: /ǵ/ [ta] "eat"
[ǵa] "harpoon"
- /t/: /ǵ/ [tiǵ] "wet"
[giǵ] "become"
- /t/: /ǵ/ [tʌlǵi] "to the swamp"
[tʌlǵi] "across"
- /t/: /q/ [tiq] "robin"
[qin] "see"
- /g/: /ǵ/ [gid] "child, doll"
[ǵid] "predicate of condition"

- /g/: /q/ [gɪŋ] "hold, support"
[qɪŋ] "see"
- /g/: /ǵ/ [ga] "some"
[ǵa] "harpoon"
- /k/: /ǧ/ [kiǧaw] "a name (foregrounded)"
[ǧigaw] "salmon trap (rapid speech)"
- /k/: /q/ [kʉŋ] "whale, point"
[qʉŋ] "moon"
- /ḳ/: /ǧ/ [ḳaw] "herring spawn"
[qaway] "the (bird's) egg"
- /ḳ/: /ǵ/ [ṣq̣aǵju] "stick-shaped"
[ṣkaǵju] "cylinder-shaped"
- /ǵ/: /c/ [ǵina] "far"
[čina] "fish"
- /c/: /č/ [cɪnsda] "from (a) salmon"
[čɪnsda] "from (a) beaver"
- /ǵ/: /č/ [ǵaʔad] "woman"
[čaʔaʔ] name of an island off the west coast of
Graham Island
- /λ/: /λ/ [λu] "when"
[ʁu] "boat"
- /λ/: /λ̣/ [λu] "when"
[λ̣u] "wedge"

- /λ/: /λ̣/ [λ̣u] "wedge"
[λu] "boat"
- /m/: /ŋ/ [malu] "minnow"
[ŋalu] "kelp (foregrounded)"
- /n/: /ŋ/ [tanay] "the bear"
[taŋay] "the salt"
- /w/: /y/ [qʌlgay] "the bottle"
[qʌlgaw] "a bottle (foregrounded; rapid speech)"
- /w/: /l/ [ǰaw] "in, amongst (foregrounded; rapid speech)"
[ǰal] "night"
- /y/: /l/ [ǰay] "blood"
[ǰal] "night"
- /m/: /b/ [dʌmǰu] "round"
[dʌpǰu] "crooked"
- /s/: /ʒ/ [sgaǰu] "ring-like"
[ʒgaǰu] "forking"
- /x/: /χ/ [xɪl] "medicine"
[χɪl] "neck"
- /χ/: /h/ [χaŋa] "face"
[hana] "pretty"
- /i/: /u/ [gi] "to"
[gu] "there"

/i/: /a/ [kaway] "the herring spawn"

[kiway] "the way, clam"

/i/: /ʌ/ [sqɪl] "black cod"

[sqʌl] "shoulder"

/u/: /a/ [gu] "there"

[ga] "some"

/u/: /ʌ/ [kuda] "beak"

[kʌdʒu] "small"

/a/: /ʌ/ [kʌw] "cold (inanimate)"

[kaw] "herring spawn"

[gʌn] "for"

[gan] "berry"

2.2.6 The Syllable Canon

The Haida syllable is an articulatory grouping of consonant segments around a vocalic nucleus. This grouping appears to be produced by a single contraction of the chest muscles generating air flow through the vocal tract. In certain words, however, there is more than one possible syllable breakdown which meets this purely articulatory criterion. In such cases the criterion for choosing a particular analysis into syllables must be the canon revealed by monosyllabic words.

The Skidegate syllable can have a variety of shapes, subject to the constraint that it must contain an initial consonant

and one, and only one, vowel. This fact is of typological interest because it appears that in several Northwestern languages, such as Bella Coola, Upper Chehalis and possibly Nootka, adjacent consonants may represent the peaks of different syllables. Consonant sequences appear within syllables both preceding and following the vowel nucleus. The shapes of these pre- and post-vocalic clusters are independent of each other. The canon for the prevocalic sequence may be summarized as follows:

(Alveodental fricative) C (semi-vowel)

If the first optional segment is present C must be a stop.

If only the second optional segment is present C must be either a back fricative (not /h/, however) or a stop (never /b/ nor an affricate nor, if the semivowel is /w/, any front stop.) The canon for the postvocalic sequence may be summarized as

(Semi-vowel) C (s)

where C may be a sonorant (not a semi-vowel, however), a non-tense front stop or ʔ, or a sequence of non-tense front stop plus ʔ. The sequence /C semivowel/ in prevocalic position is manifested phonetically as a single segment: thus /ky/ is pronounced [kʷ].

This organization of the syllable canon clearly assigns fricatives to natural classes. By "front" positions generally I mean bilabial and alveodental; "back" labels velar and uvular (and, for stops, glottal as well.) Only back fric-

atives can appear immediately before semivowels; only front fricatives can appear as initial segments in pre-vocalic clusters or in syllable final position. This back/front distinction also divides the stops: no front syllable can appear /__w, and no back stop can appear in syllable final position or in any syllable-final cluster.

It should be noted, in concluding this account of Skidegate phonemes and their possible combinations, that the relationship between syllable structure and morpheme structure in Skidegate is a complex and poorly understood problem at present. There are notable continuities, but also outstanding differences. For example, no Skidegate morpheme has the structure $-\{Cvk\}$ or $\{CvCsemivowel\}$, parallel with the syllable canon restrictions. However, many morphemes have an underlying initial vowel, and there is at least one with underlying form $-\underline{s}$. It seems to me very probable that a full account of morpheme structure constraints in SkH will have to incorporate some notion of an underlying syllable closely related to the "shallow" syllable described in this section. This area of Haida phonology deserves much investigation.

2.3 Phonological rules

By taking grammatical information into account it is

possible to provide a concise set of rules which predict systematic alternations in the phonemic shapes of Skidegate forms. There are a number of morpheme-specific rules in Skidegate, and I have referred to these in the sections of later chapters describing the appropriate morphemes.

There is nothing particularly complex about Haida morphophonemics, especially when viewed from the perspective of, e.g., Athapaskan or even Salishan. The contractions among the inflectional suffixes are fairly transparent. From a general point of view, the most noteworthy process is the epenthesis of a associated with a number of suffixes, but principally with the evidential suffix {ga} (though other suffixes with this shape also induce a-epenthesis.)

A second important morphophonemic process is the extremely frequent deletion of the initial g of suffixes, particularly {-gay} "nominal old information." Swanton himself regarded this process as a critical one, and dwelled upon the difficulty of stating environments in which it occurs and those in which it does not. It is true that g-deletion is not absolutely predictable; nonetheless, it does not seem to be quite as irregular as previous description has suggested.

Phonological rules in Skidegate appear to be divisible into at least two distinct sets, within each of which the

ordering convention must apply at least partially.

Between these sets no necessary ordering is evident.

The first set contains the following rules:

1. $\dot{z} \rightarrow l / _ +g$
2. $\phi \rightarrow a / _ \text{resonant} + ga$
3. $\Lambda \rightarrow a / _ a _$
4. $\check{x} \rightarrow \# / _ \text{word final or aspect suffix}$
5. $g \rightarrow \check{g} / \check{x} _$
6. $g \rightarrow \phi / \text{high vowel} + _ _$
 $\text{VC(M)} + _ _ \text{ (M = } \underline{a} \text{ or } \underline{\Lambda})$

In this last environment, however, the suffixes with underlying shape ga do not lose their initial segment if the preceding segment is an M; rather, $g \rightarrow y$.

7. $[+voc] \rightarrow [-\text{asyl}] / _ _ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} -\text{cons} \\ \text{asyl} \end{array} \right.$
8. $aa \rightarrow a$

Example derivations will be provided below. The following considerations motivate this ordering. Numerous alternations show that $\dot{z} \rightarrow l$ preceding suffixes with an initial underlying g; thus / $\dot{t}i\dot{z}$ /, / $\dot{t}ilga$ / "wet," "is wet" but / $\dot{t}i\dot{z}gasga$ / "will be wet." It is also clear that the evidential suffix (among others) triggers vowel epenthesis immediately before a final sonorant or vowel: / $di \ xwiga$ / "I'm cold," / $\Lambda \ xwayag\Lambda n$ / "he was cold (reported or inferred);" / $da \ \acute{q}a\acute{z}uga$ / "you get up,"

/da ɔ̌alawagʌn/ "you got up (reported or inferred)."

The underlying shape of the evidential suffix is revealed, in surface contexts in which the initial segment of the suffix does not delete, as ga. In an alternation like /niʔ/, /nyalagʌn/ "drink," "drank (reported or inferred)," the presence of l rather than ʔ in the second form attests to the existence of a following g earlier in the derivation (and thus accords with the independent evidence just cited for ga as an underlying shape.) Before epenthesis can occur, however, ʔ must be replaced by a resonant segment, to conform to the pattern of pre-resonant epenthesis noted elsewhere in the language. Hence, the order of rules (1) and (2) is far more natural and motivated by the facts of SkH than assuming either the reverse order or no order at all. As for (3), consider ɔ̌iʔʌ, the underlying form for "cut," + ga "evidential." The phonemic form representing this sequence is /ɔ̌iʔʌya/. Assuming that Rule 2 has applied, there would be ɔ̌iʔʌga at an intermediate stage of the derivation. Since often $g \rightarrow y/a_$, it is necessary to provide an environment in which this occurs. It would, of course, be possible to have $\Lambda \rightarrow \phi/ _ a_$, which achieves the same effect as Rules 3 and 8 together, and therefore would be more economical in terms of the number of rules. Since deletion of a vowel contiguous to another vowel is nowhere else present in SkH, the present formulation is

preferred. g does not delete following syllable-final \check{x} , but rather assimilates in position of articulation. However, this rule does not apply to the first segment of the aspect suffix $\{-gi\}$, which remains intact. Hence it is necessary to allow (4) to precede (5) so that this assimilation will not take place. (4) and (5) are required only in the idiolect of one of my Skidegate co-workers, whose syllable canon permitted final \check{x} , but there are traces of this segment in final position in the speech of other Skidegate speakers. It is not possible to discuss this problem in detail, but there is reason to believe that this underlying \check{x} has become $/h/$ in those idiolect in which syllable final \check{x} is not found.

(4)-(5) are not inherently ordered with respect to (1)-(2)-(3), but both sets of rules must precede (6), which specifies the conditions for the deletion of g--not only the g of the evidential, but the g of $\{-gay\}$ as well, when the latter suffix is attached to nominal stems. When $\{-gay\}$ is applied to predicate stems to form nominalizations the conditions for its deletion are much more restricted. Part of the difficulty Swanton encountered in explaining the pattern of deletion for the first segment in $\{-gay\}$ was due to his failure to distinguish nominal from predicate environments.

Once g is deleted, Rule (7) applies. The most obvious functioning of this rule is found when α has the value +.

The rule then has the form [+voc] → [-syll]/ $\underline{\quad}$ $\begin{pmatrix} -\text{cons} \\ +\text{syll} \end{pmatrix}$,
 i.e., vowels lose syllabicity before other vowels. Thus one
 has derivations such as the following:

{niʒ} "drink" - {ga} "evidential"

niʒga

↓

niʒga (Rule 1)

↓

nialga (Rule 2)

↓

niala (Rule 6)

↓

nyala (Rule 7)

which is the correct phonemic shape.

{ʃAw} "go out fishing" - {ʔin} "on a boat" - {ga} "evidential"

ʃAwʔinga

↓

ʃAwʔianga (Rule 1)

↓

ʃAwʔiana (Rule 6)

↓

ʃAwʔyana (Rule 7)

and /ʔy/ becomes [ỵ].

{ʃagu} "halibut" - {gay} "nominal old information"

ǰagugay

+

ǰaguay (Rule 6)

+

ǰagway (Rule 7)

But there are instances too where α has the value -; here Rule 7 has the form $[+voc] \rightarrow +syl / _ \left[\begin{array}{l} -cons \\ -syl \end{array} \right]$. That is, a semivowel will become a full vowel before another semivowel.

Rule (7), stated as a variable rule, applies repeatedly in all eligible environments. For example:

{k^hyu} "clam" - {gay} "nominal old information"

k^hyugay

+

k^hyuay (Rule 6)

+

k^hyway (Rule 7)

+

k^hiway (Rule 7)

The evidence showing a symmetrical shift $w \rightarrow u$ is not as strong, since there are relatively few Cwi underlying shapes for nouns. Note, however, the following derivation:

{dagwi} "strong" - {sgi} "almost"

dagwisgi

There is, apparently, a rule of uncertain ordering that

$\phi \rightarrow a/i+ ___s$, whose application is not presently predictable. Thus the derivation continues:

dagwiasgi

+

dagwyasgi (Rule 7)

+

daguyasi (Rule 7)

This derivation yields the correct phonemic shape and gives strong support to the generality of Rule (7).

Another necessary set of rules is the following:

9. $\phi \rightarrow \Lambda^S / C_{lat} ___ \begin{cases} +voc \\ -syl \end{cases}$

10. $\Lambda \rightarrow i/\text{non-lateral strident alveodentals } ___ ; C_{lat} \Lambda \rightarrow C_{el}$

In any feature description, s, c, ʃ and č will, at some level, be assigned the value +strident. (9) and (10) are necessary for derivations of the form

{ɬu} "boat" - {gay} "nominal old information"

ɬugay

+

ɬuay (Rule 6)

+

ɬway (Rule 7)

+

ɬɬway (Rule 9)

+

ɬəlway (Rule 10)

Since another rule requires $\Lambda \rightarrow a$ in all open syllables, Rule (10) must precede Rule (11):

11. $\Lambda \rightarrow a$ / __syllable final

The first part of Rule (10) is necessary for derivations such as the following:

{su} "lake" - {gay} "nominal old information"

sugay

+

suay (Rule 6)

+

sway (Rule 7)

+

saway (Rule 9)

+

siway (Rule 10)

The same type of derivation accounts for the alternation /ču/ "red cedar," /čiway/ "the red cedar." Another instance of the application of Rule (10) is perhaps to be found in the alternations /ʔis/ "predicate of existence," /ʔij̥i/ "is....," /ʔisǰasga/ "will be...." The underlying shape of the existence predicate is ʔij̥. It appears difficult at first to explain the motivation for the apparent alternation /ga/ ~ /i/ on phonological grounds. The neutral tense/modal suffix has the shape /ga/ virtually everywhere

in Skidegate except when concatenated with CVj roots, so that it seems necessary to posit -ga as the underlying shape. However, when the evidential suffix {ga}, referred to above, is applied to such roots, the result is /ʔiǰa/. Hence there is reason to suppose that the underlying form of the tense/modal suffix is actually -gʌ, not -ga.

This difference in the underlying form would account for the differences in phonemic shape between the two ʔiǰ + suffix sequences. For now the derivation becomes {ʔiǰ} - {gʌ}

ʔiǰgʌ

+

ʔiǰʌ (Rule 6, only applying to this suffix when C is a stop.)

+

ʔiǰi (Rule 10)

There is direct evidence from other tense/modal suffixes to strengthen this hypothesis: /ʔiǰiŋga/ "is from time to time...", /ʔisǰʌŋgʌŋga/ "isn't from time to time...", where the underlying shape of the habitual/periodic suffix is gʌŋ. The point of this example is that, following j, the vowel of the habitual/periodic suffix, ʌ, behaves exactly as does the vowel of the neutral tense/modal suffix. Since in non-lateral contexts ʌ → a in open syllables, and since the neutral tense/modal

suffix is never followed by any other, it would not be surprising to find it appear with the shape /ga/ in all other contexts.

The difficulty with this solution is that it appears to involve an "absolute neutralization" of a and Λ and hence must be treated extremely cautiously. There is no way of demonstrating, on the basis of the current corpus for Skidegate, that the alternation /ga/ ~ /i/ is not idiosyncratic. Even if, historically, the shape of the neutral tense/modal suffix is *gΛ, it is quite possible that the alternation *gΛ ~ *i, perhaps regular at an earlier period, survived a reinterpretation of *gΛ as ga--a relic phenomenon, in other words. This reinterpretation would have occurred, naturally, after the institution of the rule neutralizing the distinction between Λ and a in open syllables. Throughout the world, the copula often preserves irregularities which are levelled out elsewhere. Hence, for the present, I will continue to interpret the underlying shape of the neutral tense/modal suffix as ga.

Further complications are introduced into the picture by the existence of the phonemic form /ǵasaŋ/ representing the concatenation of -{ǵas} "future" with -{gΛŋ} "neutral old information anaphora" (see Chapter 4 for discussion.) We should expect that, following the deletion of g, the vowel of the second suffix should → i in accord with

Rule (10). This does not occur, however; it would appear, rather, that at some point preceding the application of Rule (10) the vowel ɛ is replaced by a. This process is limited to the suffix $\{-\{g\Lambda\}\}$ of the sixth position class of predicate inflectional suffixes. It has been observed in other dialects of Haida; Welsch (1976) refers to it as "vowel strengthening," though his interpretation of its functioning differs somewhat from my own.

The second set of rules, applying in the order given, is

(A) $\check{y} \rightarrow s / ___ \text{syllable final}$

(B) $\phi \rightarrow [+voc] / s ___ +s\#_{\text{word}}$

(C) $ss \rightarrow s$

The functioning of these rules may be seen in the following derivations:

$\{?i\check{y}\}$ "predicate of existence" $\{-\{s\}$ "dependent structure"

$?i\check{y}s$

+

$?iss$ (Rule A)

+

$?isVs$ (Rule B)

Subsequently a vowel harmony rule assigns to V the same features as the vowel in the preceding syllable, to give $/?isis/$. The operation of this vowel harmony rule is also

manifested in the concatenation of $-\{\check{g}as\}$ "future" $-\{s\}$
giving the phonemic result $/\check{g}asas/$.

$\{?i\check{y}\} - \{s\} - \{i\}$ "old information anaphora"

?i\check{y}si

+

?issi (Rule A)

+

?isi (Rule C)

which is the correct phonemic output. Rule (A) is well motivated by numerous examples of the form $/?as/$ "soapberry," $/?a\check{y}aj/$ "the soapberry," etc.

The set A-C has no obvious ordering with respect to 1-11. A third "set," consisting of the single rule $\eta \rightarrow n/___$ [word or morpheme boundary] alveodental, also seems unordered with respect to either of the first two sets.

Inspection of these few rules brings to light an interesting fact. \check{g} is deleted in many contexts, yet never in contexts where--given the operation of other rules of the grammar--the phonemic output of an inflected noun or verb will be a monosyllable. If \check{g} is deleted following a, there is always a preceding syllable. Where there is no preceding syllable, \check{g} is retained--except when a preceding segment, w or y, can eventually be expanded into

a syllabic form according to Rule (7). When even this cannot be done, a vowel is inserted by Rule (9). Thus, much of Skidegate phonology would appear to be functionally unified by a rule conspiracy to guarantee polymorphemic structure for all inflected words.

Chapter 3 Nominal Forms

3.1 Introduction

SKH nominals constitute a distinct morphological class, defined by the ability to receive inflection with the suffix *-{gay}* or one of the alternate suffixes indicating that the stem is old information, or with the suffixes *-{ǵa}* or *-{i}* indicating a relation of attribution, but which cannot be inflected with any of the predicate inflectional suffixes. This definition, based specifically on morphological possibilities, does not take into account such factors as syntactic distribution. There are a number of forms whose distribution appears to be largely parallel to the nominals as I have defined them here, but whose inflectional possibilities are significantly different. It may eventually prove useful to group all of these syntactically resemblant forms under a single rubric, such as "substantive" or some comparable term, but at present, while the syntax of SKH is so little known, it seems to me preferable to rely on morphological criteria in establishing word classes.

3.2 Nominal Formation

3.2.1 Roots

With the exception of plant names, nominal forms referring to indigenous features of Skidegate culture tend to be (at least synchronically) monomorphemic. Animal names in particular are noteworthy in this respect, but the same tendency is

observable in the terms for body parts, kinship terms and common household articles. In some cases, post-Contact elements and innovations are also designated monomorphemically, e.g. /kád/ "deer." Examples of monomorphemic nominal forms are /ǵáda/ "box," /taǵun/ "spring salmon," /qigu/ "spruce root basket," /ǵuya/ "raven," /ǵa/ "harpoon," /ciǵu/ "beach, seafood."

Kinship terms, which must always be inflected, will be discussed below. Apart from this class of nominal elements and some body part terms, any nominal root can appear as an independent form.

3.2.2 Complex Forms

In many instances nominal elements are analyzable into two or more morphemes. No extremely productive grammatical formula exists for constructing such forms. Many culturally recent items are polymorphemic; special forms seem to have been coined to refer to such objects which call attention to their function and shape. Even when such forms contain recognizable morphemes, there are frequently elements present whose grammatical status is quite obscure.

3.2.2.1 Nominals containing -{ʔu}

-{ʔu} is an instrumental marker with relatively limited productivity. Its function is most clearly exhibited in forms such as the following:

/gyaǰidʔu/ "carving tool"

{gya}-"intransitivizing prefix" + {ǰid} "carve" + {ʔu}

/čisǰalaŋʔu/ "cooking pot"

{čis}- "shape classifier for hollow volumes" + {ǰalaŋ} "cook" +
- {ʔu}

The appearance of /a/ rather than /ʌ/ preceding /ŋ/

in the above example may reflect the operation of a rule
of mid-vowel epenthesis associated with -{ʔu}, as in the

form

/ʌgaqyaŋʔu/ "binoculars"

{ʌga} "land place" + {qin} "see" + -{ʔu}

Other examples are

/ǰaǰalaŋʔu/ "frying pan"

(This form has the same analysis as /čisǰalaŋʔu/ except
that the first morpheme is {ǰa}-, shape classifier for
flat objects.)

/ǰasʌʌʔu/ "shovel"

{ǰa}- "shape classifier for flat objects" + {sʌʌ} "arrange
or affect the position of something" + -{ʔu}

/kidsǰalaŋʔu/ "poker"

{kids}- meaning unknown, but almost certainly related to
the instrumental prefix {kid}- "with a stick" + {ǰalaŋ}
"cook" + -{ʔu}

3.2.2.2 Nominals containing Shape Classifiers

The shape classifiers in Skidegate are a set of morphemes which most frequently appear prefixally with certain predicates indicating motion or position, and also with number predicates. The shape classifiers mark size, shape and animateness of the nominals associated with them. These morphemes also appear in nominal forms themselves. Some of the forms given in 3.1.2.1 are examples. In addition there are forms such as the following:

/g̃ud̃gagaŋʔu/ "chair"

{g̃ud} meaning uncertain, but probably etymologically connected with Northern Haida /ʔud/ "buttocks," with which it is cognate + {iḡa} "shape classifier for objects which involve branching off the end of some node" + {g̃aŋ} meaning unknown + -{ʔu} "instrumental"

/g̃aʔal/ "box lid"

{g̃a} "shape classifier for flat things" + {ʔal} meaning unknown.

/stask̃aḡya/ "shoe," discussed below in 3.1.2.3, contains the shape classifier for "shoe" and other open cylinders, {ska}. In all cases, when a nominal form which contains a shape classifier appears with one of the predicates which requires shape specification (as described in Chapter 4),

the shape prefix which appears in the predicate is identical with that contained in the noun to which it applies.

3.2.2.3 Nominals containing {-gya}

{gya} is found in a number of nominal forms referring to things which are worn on the body. Swanton (1911, p. 239) suggests that the directional suffix -gya given in his data may be the same form as the root of the verb "stand." While I do not find this suggestion convincing, it seems to me that there may be a connection between this nominal formative {gya} and the predicate "stand."

I have glossed this morpheme as "encircling," but "standing at" may be closer to the actual sense.

Thus in the following form

/sʌgya/ "ring"

{sʌ} "hand, finger" (possibly an instrumental prefix) +

{gya} "stand at"

the ring is that which "stands at" or "guards" the fingers. One difficulty which arises in this analysis is illustrated by the form for "the ring:"

/sʌgigay/ "the ring"

Same analysis as the previous example except that here the old information suffix {-gay} is added.

In terms of the analysis offered here it is necessary to posit a surface form [gigay] arising out of a concatenation of {gya}-{gay}, which, while not implausible, is

somewhat unmotivated. The same difficulty arises with the other members of this set, which are

/xigya/ "bracelet"

{xi}- "instrumental prefix for 'arm'" + {gya}

/gyugya/ "earring"

Same analysis as the foregoing except that {gyu} "ear" precedes {gya}

/qAnǵagya/ "apron"

{qAn} "front" + {ǵa} meaning unknown, possibly the attributive suffix + {gya}

3.2.2.4 Nominals containing {-dan}

The suffix {-dan} appears in two nominal forms and seems to mean "place for..." or, conceivably, "instrument."

/čamudan/ "stove"

{čamu} "fire, firewood, burn" + {dan}

/taydan/ "bed"

{tay} "lie down" + {dan}

3.2.2.5 Nominals containing {-tisgu}

The morpheme {-tisgu} appears in three forms:

/cītisgu/ "coat," /gAm̄tisgu/ "kerchief," /xʷat̄isgu/

"man's shirt." The first contains the shape classifier {ci} for non-rigid containers; the latter two are not recognizable.

3.2.2.6 Nominal Sequences

In a number of instances nouns appear to be produced by simply concatenating nominal forms. Often this involves the use of the attributive suffix *-{ǵa}*, particularly in plant names. In other cases, however, the nominals in the sequence are uninflected. Thus the form for "Adam's apple" is */qagʌn skuʃi/*: *{qagʌn}* "throat," *{skuʃi}* "bone." The calf of the leg is called */kyaʃ qaw/*, where the first word identifies the lower leg and the second means "egg." "Toad" is */kʲyan qʉstan/* in which the first element is a variant of the word *{kʲin}* "forest," and the second means "crab." Many other examples of this type exist, e.g. */qaʃulnay/* "bathroom," literally "go-out house".

Another type of nominal form consists of a particle followed by some modifying element. This is the structure of the forms which indicate types of person based upon the particles *{nan}* (singular) and *{ʃʌ}* (plural), both of which refer to some indefinite or unspecified person(s):

/ʃaw nan ʃan kʲyawǵa ǵida/ "I'm waiting for someone."

{ʃa} first person singular (active), *{hʌw}* clause emphasis,

{nan}, *{ʃan}* emphatic particle, *{kʲyawǵa}* "until," *{ǵid}*

"lack, wait for" *-{ǵa}* neutral tense/modal suffix

/daʃinay nan daǵasi ǵan di ʔunsʔida/ "I know whose hat it is."

{daʃin} "hat"-*{ǵay}* nominal old information, *{nan}*,

{daǵa} "own"-{s} dependent structure-{i} old information anaphora, {ǵan} "for," {di} first person singular (neutral), {?unsʔad} "know"-{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

As explained earlier, the ordinary Skidegate form used to translate "man" consists of {naŋ} followed by a modifying form produced by predicatizing {?iŋiŋ} "male."

Other forms of this type are

/nan jaʔada/ "a woman"

{naŋ}, {jaʔad} "woman" + -{ga} "middle"

/naŋ ǵaxa/ "a child"

{naŋ}, {ǵaxa} "weak"

/nan stawa/ "a witch"

{naŋ}, {stʔaw} "witch" + -{ga} "middle"

In one case the speaker used the English vocabulary item "chief" in conjunction with {naŋ}, forming [naŋ čIyfgas] "the chief." Here the rule for initial g-deletion does not apply, and the full form of the predicatizing "middle" morpheme is revealed. (Properly, the Skidegate form for "a chief" is /naŋ ǵula/ or /naŋ ǵʔwla/.)

Similar constructions are formed for the plural with {ʔʔ} replacing {naŋ}. Keen, in his earlier study of the Masset dialect, refers to these two morphemes as "articles,"

but this term seems inappropriate, suggesting as it does a grammatical form whose occurrence is dependent upon that of some other form. As the example sentences given show quite clearly, {naŋ} can appear independently of any modifying element and assume the agentive function in clauses, for example. The same is true for {iA}.

3.3 Nominal Inflection

3.3.1 Old and New Information

The concept of a distinction between old and new information has been most forcefully presented in recent years by Wallace Chafe (1970). The essence of this concept is that language is to be seen as a more or less continuous discourse, into which elements are continually being introduced for the first time and then referred to in later parts of the discourse. On their first appearance in the discourse they constitute "new" information; in subsequent discourse they are "old" information. Certain elements belong to the stock of cultural information all speakers of a language share, and hence are inherently "old."

New information is never overtly marked in Skidegate; elements which correspond in translation to form preceded by "a" or "an" have no inflection at all. Nominal forms which constitute old information (corresponding to

translation forms preceded by "the, this, that")
are marked with a suffix with the underlying shape

gay:

/ǰa/ "dog, dogs"

{ǰa} "dog"

/ǰagay/ "the dog, dogs"

{ǰa} "dog"-{gay}

-{gay} applies only to non-human nominal forms (with the exception of certain formations indicating aggregates.)

Of all the affixes in Skidegate, -{gay} has the most idiosyncratic phonology. The conditioning of the initial g-deletion to which this form is usually subject cannot be stated simply; it is easier to summarize the contexts in which it is retained:

(1) in all monosyllabic forms with Ca shape, as in the above example with {ǰa};

(2) in all items of foreign vocabulary which have not been reinterpreted as Skidegate forms: [blyčgay] "the beach," [mayngay] "the mine," [bidgay] "the dime," [čIkcIkgay] "the wagon" (from Chinook Jargon.)

(3) in most predicates with final Ca shape, e.g., /hAlǰagay/ nominalization of {hAlǰa} "gather."

In most other contexts, initial g deletes when {gay} is suffixed to nominal stems: /tanay/ "the bear," where the root is {tan} "bear," /činay/ "the beaver" with {čin} the

root for "beaver," and /cinay/ "the fish" with {cina} the root for "fish." The behavior of {-gay} when suffixed to predicate stems is significantly different from its use in nominal inflection in two respects: in the first place it often induces a-e-penthesis in predicate stems /__sonorant final, and in the second place g survives in a much wider range of environments. The first phenomenon is illustrated in compound bases containing the root {ǵiɬ} "become," where the presence of {-gay} triggers a-e-penthesis before the final derived sonorant to produce the phonemic string /ǵyalay/ by the same sort of derivation as that demonstrated for the evidential {-ga} at length in 2.2. Similarly, {giʔi} "sew"-{-gay} yields the string /giʔyagay/, with /ʔy/ becoming, of course, [y̥]. When the derivational suffix {-ʔin} "by means of a vehicle" is suffixed to a stem and {-gay} is added, the two suffixes have the surface form /ʔyangay/. The second phenomenon referred to above is illustrated by comparing the forms /tanay/ "the bear" and /čīnay/ "the beaver" with the forms /x̣ʌwʔyangay/ "going out fishing" containing the sequence {-x̣ʌw}-{-ʔin} referred to above, and with /qyangay/, the product of {qin} "see"-{-gay}. Clearly g is retained when the old information suffix is applied to a predicate stem in the same environments in which it deletes when the suffix is applied to a nominal stem.

Another respect in which the phonological behavior of
 -{gay} seems to be determined by the form class with which
 it co-occurs is found in the following examples, in
 which -{gay} has the shallow shape /yey/:

/ci²xway gi hAl²xayey law²lan/ "Getting seafood is easy."

{ci²xu} "seafood"-{gay}, {gi} "to, towards," {hAl²xa} "gather"-
 {gay}, {law²lan} "easy"-{gAn} neutral old information anaphora

/i²gangul²xayey gina walu xan gin²qwang²Angin/ "The work made there be
 lots of everything."

{i²gangul²xa} "work"-{gay}, {gina} non-human pro-nominal,
 {walu} particle which, associated with {xan}, means "all,
 everything," {xan} emphatic, {gin²}- "causative" + {qwan} "lots"-
 {gAn} "habitual/periodic"-{gAn} "past tense"

Other instances include:

/ʔis²l²xayey/ "going (there)"

{ʔij} "be" +-{l²xa} "to that place"-{gay}

/dalyey/ "rain"

{dal} "rain"-{gay}

/xu²lyey/ "intermittant drinking"

{xu²l²l} "drink intermittantly"-{gay}

Number is in most cases not marked in nominal forms.

Therefore a nominal co-occurring with -{gay} is unspecified
 for number; /tanay/, for example, will translate both
 "the bear" and "the bears" according to context. This general

pattern does not hold, however, when the nominal refers to a human category: thus /jaʔaday/ is always translated "the women," never "the woman." In order to construct the form which translates "the woman," a nominal structure of the type discussed above in 3.1.2.6 containing {naŋ} must be used. The old information status of such a form is marked by a suffix {-s}. /naŋ ʔiŋiŋa/ "a man" becomes /naŋ ʔiŋiŋas/ "the man;" /naŋ ǵaxa/ "a child" becomes /naŋ ǵaxas/ "the child." According to residents of Skidegate, the name Ninstints, which has been applied to the extinct Haida-speaking community on Anthony Island, derives from a myth of the village's origin, in which a chief reveals a two-fold nature encompassing both human existence and an affinity with white mice. He becomes known as /nan sdins/: {naŋ}, {sdiŋ} "two"-{-s}. The construction literally means "the one who is two."

3.3.2 Numeration and Aggregation

Non-human nominal forms do not contain overt grammatical indication of number. For certain categories, however, plurality is indicated by a suffix {-lAŋ}. This morpheme co-occurs with terms identifying types of relationship:

/gidǵalAŋ/ "children"

{gid} "child"-{ǵa}"attribution"-{-lAŋ}

/ʔtaxwulAŋ/ "friends"

{ʔtaxu} "friend"-{-lAŋ}

k!waigalañ "elder brothers" (Swanton 1911, p. 260.)

{t̃taxwi} apparently requires a suffix {-i} when the singular is indicated; this may be the same as the attributive {-i} used in connection with body part terms, but the identification is not certain.

The form {-čid} at first appears to be a plural suffix as well: /ʔiḱiŋ/ "man," /ʔiḱiŋčid/ "men," /jaʔad/ "woman," /jaʔadčid/ "women," /g̃axa/ "child," /g̃axačid/ "children," /st̃aw/ "witch," /st̃awčid/ "witches." I suggest, however, that {-čid} does not actually mark plurality as such, but rather indicates some type of aggregate or collectivity. In all my data {-čid} is used in discourse contexts involving groups of people; for example

/ʔiḱiŋčiday s̃gwanaw taŋa ɬa giŋdaws̃gag̃an/ "I sent one of the boys for salt water."

{ʔiḱiŋ} "man" + {-čid} {-gay} nominal old information, {s̃gwan} "one"-{a} meaning unknown, {h̃aw} foreground, {taŋa} "salt, saltwater," {ɬa} "first person singular (active)," {giŋ}- "causative" + {d̃aw} "get something" + {-s̃ga} "towards the beach"-{g̃an} "past tense"

In this example, and in all those Swanton provides (1911, p. 260), nominal forms containing {-čid} also contain the suffix {-gay}. This reinforces the likelihood that {-čid} indicates something other than simple plurality, since ordinarily {-gay} does not apply to human old information. In effect {-čid} refers to a unit of collectivity,

which in itself is not human, although its members are.

3.3.3 Attribution

The suffix $\{-\check{g}a\}$ appears in nominal forms and in particle constructions, and indicates a relationship of attribution between the nominal form in which it appears and some other noun or pronoun. Where there is a syntactic contrast between a discourse situation in which the subject of a clause is co-referential with the possessor (in the genitive sense) in that clause, as opposed to a situation in which there is no such co-referentiality, $\{-\check{g}a\}$ is used in the latter case, and a suffix $\{-\Lambda\eta\}$ used for the former. $\{-\check{g}a\}$ is also used, however, in syntactic situations--e.g. plant names--where there is no possibility of this type of co-referentiality. Hence it seems accurate to describe a situation in which the subject of the sentence and the possessor are identical as in some sense marked and represented by $\{-\Lambda\eta\}$, while $\{-\check{g}a\}$ refers to all other situations and thus signals the unmarked situation. The attributive relationship takes three specific forms: genuine possession, kinship relation and a general connection whose precise content is inferred from the discourse context.

3.3.3.1 Kinship Terms

Kinship terms in Skidegate consist of a root plus a suffix indicating whether the term is used for reference or address. Address is normally marked by a morpheme which always has the shape /ay/, as in /ʔaway/ "mother," /cinay/ "grandfather" where the roots are respectively {ʔaw} and {cin}. One wonders whether the /ay/ partial represents a specialized use of the nominal old information suffix; unfortunately there is no way to tell this. The ordinary elicitation form for reference kin terms has the structure root -{ǵa}:

/ǰadǵa/ "father"

{ǰad} "father (woman speaking)" -{ǵa}

/ʌalǵa/ "husband"

{ʌal} "husband" -{ǵa}

The ordinary elicitation form given for "my father" would be /di ǰadǵa/, where {di} is the neutral first person singular particle. As noted above, -{ǵa} is also used in cases of non-coreferentiality between subject and genitive possessor, as in

/di cinǵa stǵa/ "My grandfather's sick."

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {cin} "grandfather"-

{ǵa}, {stǵi} "sick"-{ǵa} neutral tense/mode suffix

In the special case of such co-referentiality -{ʌŋ} is used:

/ʔawʌn ʔʌ qingʌn/ "I saw my mother."

{ʔaw} "mother"-{ʌŋ}, {ʔa} "first person singular (active),"
 {qin} "see"-{gʌŋ} "past tense"

3.3.3.2 Possession

The distribution of {-ǵa} in marking actual, semantic possession is the same as that discussed in the preceding section.

/di ʔtaxwi naǵa / 'my friend's house.'

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {ʔtaxu} "friend"-
 {i} use unclear, {na} "house"-{-ǵa}

/di qasga stiga/ 'My head hurts.'

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {qas} "head" -{-ǵa},
 {sti} "sick" -{-ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

When the possessor is the subject of the sentence the particle {ʔʌŋǵa} is used. This form appears to be a sequence ʔʌŋ-ǵa, where the first element bears a striking resemblance to the marked attribution suffix discussed in the preceding section, and the second would seem to be the unmarked attribution suffix. Such an analysis is difficult to explain synchronically, but is probably valid historically.

/ǵaxagay ʔasin ʔʌŋǵa ʔalʌŋ ʔisdagʌŋin/ 'We used to take our children with us.'

{ǵaxa} "child, weak"-{-gay} nominal old information,

{ʔasin} "also," {ʔʌŋǵa}, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active),"

{ʔisda} general action predicate -{-gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" -

{gAn} "past tense"

Other possessive constructions involving the use of {-ǵa} will be discussed in Chapter 5.

3.3.3.3 General Attribution

{-ǵa} is frequently used to establish a relationship of association whose precise nature is evident from context. Thus in

/yahgu taǵaǵa/ "the middle of the village"

{yaǵ} "middle," {gu} "there," {taǵa} "sand"-{-ǵa}

{-ǵa} certainly does not mark possession. (Note that the analysis of yaǵ as the underlying form of the root for "middle" is tentative and based on alternations of the form /kyah/ ~ /kiǵa/ "outside," where it seems likely that ǵ derives from Swanton's "distributive" {ǵa}.) Many plant names have this form:

/ǵalčida lisǵa/ "Crow's lace"

{ǵalčida} "crow," {lis} "lace"-{-ǵa}

/yanAn xilǵa/ "Cloud medicine"

{yanAn} "cloud," {xil} "leaf"-{-ǵa}

Chapter 4 Predicate Structure

4.1 Summary of Predicate Structures

Skidegate utilizes two types of predicate structure, independent and dependent. The independent predicate can be used to form sentences by appearing either as the only predicate in the sentence or in combination with other independent or dependent predicates. Dependent predicates cannot be the only predicate in a sentence. They appear in two principal types of construction: embedded clauses, of which there are three major forms, and nominalized constructions.

4.2 Independent Predicate Structure

The independent Skidegate predicate displays three significant levels of grammatical structure. The maximal predicate word consists of a predicate stem plus one or more inflectional suffixes. The predicate stem is analyzable into one or more optional derivational prefixes, one or more predicate bases, and one or more optional derivational suffixes. The predicate base is generated by the following rule:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Base} \rightarrow (\text{prefix}) \text{ R } (\text{suffix}) \\ \qquad \qquad \text{Predicate root} \\ \text{R} \rightarrow \text{Nominal root} \\ \qquad \qquad \text{" } \quad \phi \end{array}$$

There is an obvious parallelism between the structure

of the base, as given here, and the structure of the stem. The reason for distinguishing them is that the base or series of bases can precede a whole series of derivational suffixes occurring in a fixed order, and where there is more than one base present it is clearly undesirable to suppose that these derivational suffixes form a constituent solely with the last base in the series. On the other hand, some mechanism is needed to allow derivational suffixes to appear within bases, since this is one of the distinctive properties of Haida compounding. Hence two different orders of structure are required to account for the distribution of derivational suffixes. The justification of the inclusion of prefixes in the formula for the base, as well as the null value for R, is that the language contains what are, synchronically at least, prefix-suffix constructions functioning as bases, with no grammatical root present. I regard any monomorphemic form which can take inflectional suffixes directly as a predicate root; in terms of this definition neither the derivational prefixes nor derivational suffixes which apparently combine with them to form stems can be regarded as roots. Hence the correct base form can only be generated by allowing a null value for R.

Diachronically, such constructions seem to suggest that the prefixes which participate in them were originally independent elements, since one finds them in other contexts in which their prefixal status seems rather doubtful. Other evidence supports this suggestion, to which we will return below.

4.2.1 Derivation and Inflection

The distinction between derivation and inflection is required only in the suffixes; there are no inflectional prefixes. Inflectional suffixes are those which have no selectional restrictions on the stems to which they are suffixed. Derivational suffixes are governed in their co-occurrence with stems by the grammatical sub-categories to which the stem belongs. This distributional difference corresponds to an apparent difference in semantic effect: derivational suffixes seem to induce changes in the meanings contributed by the bases or stems to which they apply, while inflectional suffixes do not change meaning but rather contribute information necessary to place the indicated meaning in the discourse context. Freedom of co-occurrence has two important correlates in terms of linear and grammatical order: in the first place, the inflectional suffixes are all adjacent to each other and are all to the right of the derivational suffixes; in

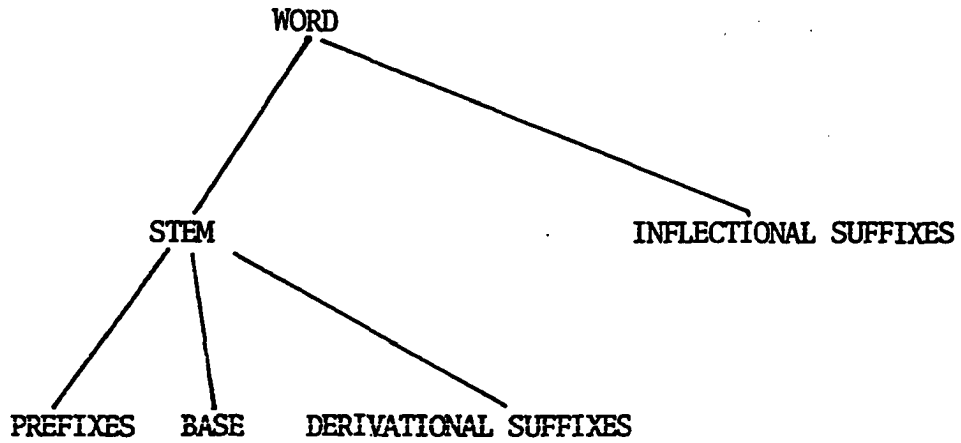


Chart 1: Analytic Levels of the Predicate

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	Aspect	Plural	Negative	Habitual	Tense/info.	Tense/modal	Info. Anaphora
-xidi (incip.)		-ǧu	-gΛŋ	-gΛŋ	-ǧas	-ga	-i
-di (dur.)					-ga	-gΛŋ	
-gi (complet.)						-gΛŋ	
-sgi ("almost")							

Chart 2: Inflectional Suffixes

al

Position Classes

	1	2	3	4
-ga -ǵa	1			
-či -xurč -tΛ -tΛč -ǵun -šΛča -λΛ -gigΛη	2	-sλΛ	-da	-ǵa -?in
-ǵu -dΛl -?Λn	3			
-?u -čanη	4			

Chart 3: Derivational Suffixes

	Instrumentals	Shape elements
	da-	see 4.2.3.2.1 for list
	dʌŋ-	
	ʌu-	
	ʌʌ-	
Causatives	gay-	
	q̣u-	
	ʔum-	
	ṣqud-	
giŋ-	kid-	
	Intransitive	
kil-	gya-	

Chart 4: Prefixes

the second place, only derivational suffixes can appear within the base itself. The suffix which appears within parentheses in the rule for the generation of the base is always a derivational suffix.

4.2.2 Inflectional Suffixes

A description of the inflectional suffixes follows. These suffixes are distributed in seven position classes following the derivational suffix position classes. In independent predicates a suffix belonging to position class 6 must be present unless the sentence contains the imperative particle {la} or the interrogative particle {gwa} (see Chart 2.)

4.2.2.1 Position Class 1

The first position class contains aspect markers. These suffixes are independent of tense, since they can co-occur with any of the tense/modal suffixes of position class 6 (though this is not true in all cases for all informants) or either of the suffixes in position class 5. This set of suffixes serves to locate participants with respect to the action or state presented in the base.

4.2.2.1.1 -{xidi}

-{xidi} indicates participation which has not yet occurred but which is about to; that is, participation is imminent.

Often the translation ignores the imminent aspect of the participation, so that the English is a simple future.

/lA qaxidayagAn/ "He was just getting up."

{lA} "third person (active)," {qaxu} "get up from prone position" - {xidi}-{ga} "second hand information" -{gAn}"past tense"

/lA xA qingaxidiga/ "I'm ready to go and see him."

{lA}"third person (neutral)," {xA} "first person singular (active)," {qin} "see" + -{ga} "translocative"-{xidi}-{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

/xyaxu ?isxidiga/ "There's going to be a dance."

{xyax} "dance," {hAw} foreground, {?ij} existence predicate - {xidi}-{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

It may be noted that imminence must be defined relative to the action in question: a dance which is going to be held tomorrow is regarded as imminent, while a meal which is going to be eaten tomorrow is not.

4.2.2.1.2 -{di}

-{di} is the durative aspect marker, signalling the ongoing involvement of participants in the action or state indicated by the stem.

/talAŋ λAgulğadyaŋ/ "We're fixing it."

{talAŋ} "first person plural (active), {λA}- "with the hand"

+ {ǵuǵa} "make, fix" - {di} - {gΛη} neutral old information
anaphora

/ʔu kǵasλΛdyaη/ "It's drying"

{ʔu} "non-human participant," {ka} "dry" + -{ǵa} "change of
state" - {sλΛ} "permeation" - {di} - {gΛη} "neutral old informa-
tion anaphora"

/ʔalΛn λAskumǵadiga/ "We're right in the middle of cleaning it."

{ʔalΛη} "first person plural (active)" {λΛ} - "with the hand" +
{skumǵa} "clean" - {di} - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

Compare the following two sentences:

/ʔu ǵalΛnsλaη/ "It gets cooked, it got cooked."

{ʔu} "non-human participant," {ǵalΛη} "cook" - {sλΛ} "permea-
tion" - {gΛη} neutral old information anaphora

/ʔu ǵalΛnsλΛdyaη/ "It's getting cooked."

(Same analysis as the preceding example except that -{di}
is present.)

There are a number of predicates in SkH which indicate
actions of very brief, even instantaneous, duration. These
"punctual" stems cannot co-occur with -{di}. For example,
{squda} "hit (with the fist)" cannot co-occur with -{di};
since the action has no duration, it is not possible to refer

to participation in the action of hitting while the action is going on. Only if the derivational suffix $\{-g\Lambda\}$ marking a repetition of punctual action is added to $\{squda\}$ can $\{-di\}$ be suffixed: $/la \text{ } \text{ʔ} \Lambda \text{ } squdandiga/$ "I'm hitting him."

$\{-di\}$ participates in certain idiosyncratic contractions:

(1) $\{-di\}-\{\check{g}as\}$ "future" $\rightarrow /dyas/$. This contraction also applies to $\{-xidi\}$; it apparently involves deletion of the initial segment of $\{-\check{g}as\}$.

(2) $\{-di\}-\{g\Lambda\}$ neutral old information anaphora $\rightarrow /dya\Lambda/$.

Here too the initial segment of $\{-g\Lambda\}$ has deleted. This contraction occurs only when the suffix following $\{-di\}$ is the neutral old information anaphora suffix; it never occurs when the suffix which follows is $\{-g\Lambda\}$ "habitual/periodic." Such morpheme specificity in the operation of phonological rules is a major theme of Skidegate phonology.

4.2.2.1.3 $\{-gi\}$

The analysis of $\{-gi\}$ is difficult, as speakers often disagree on the proper interpretation of forms containing it, and because in certain contexts it seems to mean "always," rather than "already," the completive meaning complementary to the other aspects already discussed. It is not clear whether polysemy or homophony is involved in this variation. In the latter meaning it may be described as signalling the prior completion of participation in

some action or situation.

/la ʒa qɪŋgɪgʌn/ "I already saw him."

{lʌ} "third person (neutral)," {ʒa} "first person singular (active)," {qɪŋ} "see"-{gɪ}-{gʌn} "past tense"

/lʌ ʃuʌgɪgɪgʌ/ "He's just finished drinking."

{lʌ} "third person (active)," {ʃuʌ} "drink," -{gɪ}, -{gʌ} neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.2.1.4 -{sgɪ}

-{sgɪ} indicates that participation in the action or state indicated in the stem almost took place. There is some uncertainty about the membership of -{sgɪ} in this position class, or among the inflectional suffixes in general.

/law qʌnʌŋgɪsgɪgʌ/ "He almost went crazy."

{lʌ} "third person (neutral)," {qʌnʌŋ} "crazy"+ {gɪ} "become"-{sgɪ}-{gʌ} neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.2.2 Position Class 2

Inflectional position class 2 has one member, -{gʊ}, which indicates third person plurality in either the agent or the non agent in any situation:

/di gi la wasqʌwsdaɣʊgʌn/ "They yelled at me."

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {gi} "to,"

{la} "third person (active)," {wasqΛwǰ}- "yell (once)" +
 {da} meaning uncertain: either causative or plural - {ǰu}-
 {gΛn} "past tense"

-{ǰu} participates in the following contractions:

(1) -{ǰu} -{ǰas} "future" → /ǰwas/. Here it appears
 that the initial segment of -{ǰas} deletes.

(2) -{ǰu} -{gΛn} neutral old information anaphora → /ǰwan/.
 Here too the initial segment of -{gΛn} has deleted.

4.2.2.3 Position Class 3

Inflectional position class 3 has a single member,
 -{ǰΛn}, the negative suffix. Negation always requires
 this suffix and the negative particle {gΛm}.

/gΛm gu ɬa ʔisǰΛnǰasga/ "I will not be there."

{gΛm} "not," {gu} "there," {ɬa} "first person singular
 (active)," {ʔiǰ} existence predicate -{ǰΛn}-{ǰas} "future"
 -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.2.4 Position Class 4

Inflectional position class 4 has one member, -{gΛn},
 which marks habitual or periodic participation in the
 action or condition indicated by the stem. It is occas-
 ionally translated "always," though this translation
 usually requires the presence of a preceding suffix
 -{gi} (see above, 4.2.2.1.3.)

Certain bases must always be inflected with the habitual/per-

iodic suffix. Thus {kilxi} "need" obligatorily appears inflected with this suffix; the only way one can determine that the base is not in fact kilxigΛη is by forming the negative: /gΛm gi di kilxiǰΛngΛnga/ "I don't need it," where the negative suffix, described in the preceding section, appears between {kilxi} and {-gΛη}.

/ʔammu lΛ ʔiǰinga/"He comes here from time to time."
 {ʔam} "here," {hΛw} foreground, {la} "third person (active)," {ʔiǰ} existence predicate {-gΛη}{-ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

This example illustrates the contraction $\check{\text{j}} + \underline{\text{g}\Lambda\eta} \rightarrow /j\text{i}\eta/$.

4.2.2.5 Position Class 5

Inflectional position class 5 has two members, {-ǰgas} and {-ga}.

4.2.2.5.1 {-ǰgas}

-{ǰgas} marks the future, with occasional translation as a conditional.

/gΛm gu ʔa ʔisǰΛngǰasga/ "I will not be there."

(See 4.2.2.3 for analysis.)

In general, VCa (where V is a mid-vowel) {-ǰgas} $\rightarrow /VCas/$.

-{ǰgas} participates in other, more idiosyncratic contrac-

tions, e.g. {kudʔuɿ} "die"-{gas}→ /kudʔwaɿs/

4.2.2.5.2 -{ga}

-{ga} has two historically interrelated functions:

(1) It indicates that the speaker has no firsthand knowledge of the information contained in the clause to which the predicate it inflects belongs. It appears quite commonly in the narration of traditional textual material. Since the speaker is expected to be aware of his or her actions, -{ga} will not ordinarily appear in independent predicates when the speaker is a participant in the action of situation. This suffix can only be applied to past situations. When asked to repeat an item of text substituting "I" for "he" or "she" or the present for the past, the speaker automatically drops -{ga}.

/lA gwalagAn/ "He felt sorry (second-hand information.)"

{lA} "third person (neutral)," {guɿ} "feel sorry" -{ga}-{gAn}
"past"

(2) -{ga} is used to indicate the past tense in contexts where there is no overt tense marking.

(a) In interrogative forms of sentences formed with the particle {gwa} there is no tense inflection in the predicate.

Sentences of the form

/dʌŋ ʔwida/ "You are hungry"

{dʌŋ} "second person singular (neutral)," {ʔud}

"hungry"-{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

have corresponding interrogative forms

/dʌŋ gwa ʔud/ "Are you hungry?"

When the tense-inflected form of the sentence

contains the past tense suffix $\{-ga\}$, the interrogative

must be formed with the second-hand information suffix

$\{-ga\}$.

/dʌŋ gwa ʔwida/ "Were you hungry?"

(Identical to the preceding example except that

$\{-ga\}$ is suffixed to {ʔud}.)

/ʔasi gwa da qyana/ "Did you see this?"

{ʔa} "this," $\{-si\}$ pronominalizer for deictic

particles, {gwa} interrogative, {da} "second person

singular (active)," {qin} "see"-{ga}

(b) In interrogatives formed with the in-

terrogative pronominal particles (see Chapter 5)

the tense inflection must always be made with $\{-ga\}$

neutral old-information-anaphora. In such questions,

just as with those formed by using {gwa}, the only

way to indicate that the sentence refers to the past is

to use $\{-ga\}$ second hand information.

/gismudʔu lʌ ʔisʌʔxayan/ "When did he come back?"

{gismud} "when," {-u} "interrogative," {la} "third person (active)," {ʔij} existence predicate +-{hAlʃa} "movement toward a particular place"-{ga}-{gAn} "neutral old information anaphora"

(c) In certain dependent predicate structures, the second-hand information suffix is used to mark past occurrence even in non-interrogative forms, and even when the speaker is a participant in the action indicated by the stem:

/gina gi ʔalAn hAlʃayasu ʔalAn kandagAnjin/ "What we used to get we canned."

{gina} "what, something," {gi} "to," {ʔalAn} "first person plural (active)," {hAlʃa} "gather"-{ga}-{s} dependent structure, {hAw} foreground, {ʔalAn}, {kan} "can"-{da} "causative"-{gAn} "habitual/periodic" -{gAn} "past"

The use of {-ga} in (a)-(c) suggests that an extension of its earlier semantic range has recently been under way. This extension seems logical enough, since the second-hand information suffix is almost completely restricted to past contexts. In constructions where tense inflection has been eliminated the redundant association of {-ga} with past tense provides a means of disambiguating time reference. Such semantic extensions are not uncommon among evidential systems

generally. One might speculate that sharing position class 5 with $\{-\check{g}as\}$, which has purely tense meaning, may have put pressure on $\{-ga\}$ to conform to a more tense-like function. It is, of course, equally possible that the assignment of $\{-ga\}$ and $\{-gas\}$ to the same position class occurred only after the former had begun its semantic extension, though, given the incompatibility of $\{-\check{g}as\}$ with $\{-g\Lambda n\}$, and the restriction of $\{-ga\}$ to predicates containing $\{-g\Lambda n\}$, it is difficult to imagine that $\{-\check{g}as\}$ and $\{-ga\}$ could ever have co-occurred at any time.

4.2.2.6 Position Class 6

Inflectional position class 6 contains three suffixes, pertaining to tense and/or modal meaning.

4.2.2.6.1 $\{-ga\}$

$\{-ga\}$ appears in all non-interrogative, non-imperative predicates which are not marked as past and do not contain any old information anaphora. In almost every case the translation is in fact non-past. However, there are a number of instances in which the translation provided for a predicate form containing $\{-ga\}$ is in the past tense. In many such cases, the semantics of the stem is responsible for these past translations--e.g., stems referring to "punctual" actions. In such cases the translation will be past tense, because such actions

by their very nature are regarded as either future or past; they are too brief to have any present. In other cases, form marked with $\{-ga\}$ have past translations because of their grammatical contexts. In $/gina\ gi\ \acute{t}al\Lambda\eta\ h\Lambda l\check{x}ag\Lambda nmu\ \acute{t}al\Lambda\eta\ kandaga/$ there are two predicates: "Whatever we got we canned" there are two predicates, $/h\Lambda l\check{x}ag\Lambda n/$ and $/kandaga/$. The first is marked as past with $\{-g\Lambda n\}$; the second is not, but because of the tense of the first translates past anyway.

$/\acute{?}annu\ \Lambda\Lambda\ \acute{?}ij\acute{i}\eta ga/$ "He comes here from time to time."

(See 4.2.2.4 for analysis.)

$/\acute{?}al\Lambda n\ \lambda\Lambda skum\check{x}adiga/$ "We're right in the middle of cleaning it."

(See 4.2.2.1 for analysis.)

$/g\Lambda m\ gu\ \acute{z}a\ \acute{?}is\check{g}\Lambda\eta\check{g}asga/$ "I will not be there."

(See 4.2.2.3 for analysis.)

$\{-ga\}$ has an allomorph $/i/$ which appears when the suffix is added to stems with \check{j} as final segment: $/\acute{?}an\ \Lambda\Lambda\ \acute{?}ij\acute{i}/$ "He'll be here;" $/\Lambda\Lambda\ \acute{?}adi\acute{i}\acute{i}/$ "He's drowning," where the stem is $\{-\acute{?}ayda\check{j}\}$.

4.2.2.6.2 $\{-g\Lambda\eta\}$

$\{-g\Lambda\eta\}$ covers virtually the same semantic range as $\{-ga\}$. However, its privileges of occurrence are significantly different in two respects: in the first place, as noted above, it must be used in any interrogative

formed with one of the interrogative pronominal particles; in the second place, it is restricted, apart from the context just referred to, to the same grammatical environments as the $\{-i\}$ suffix which occupied the seventh inflectional position class. In independent predicate structure $\{-i\}$ can only be concatenated with the past tense suffix $\{-g\Lambda n\}$, so that semantically and distributionally $\{-g\Lambda n\}$ parallels $\{-g\Lambda n\} + \{i\}$.

$\{-g\Lambda n\}$ participates in the very general contraction $g \rightarrow \phi/CV__$. This contraction never applies to the habitual/periodic suffix $\{-g\Lambda n\}$; however, both suffixes have an allomorph $/i\eta/$ following stems with final \check{y} , parallel to the behavior of the tense/modal suffix $\{-ga\}$.

4.2.2.6.3 $\{-g\Lambda n\}$

$\{-g\Lambda n\}$ marks the past tense; forms containing this suffix never have any but a past meaning.

/lA qatuxidayag Λ n/ "He was just getting up."

(See 4.2.2.1.1 for analysis.)

/lA gwalag Λ n/ "He felt sorry (second hand information)."

(See 4.2.2.5.2 for analysis.)

The members of position class 6 bear an obvious phonological resemblance to each other. As mentioned earlier, there is no synchronic basis for further seg-

mentation of any of these suffixes, but it is tempting to speculate that at some earlier stage of the language $\{-g\Lambda\eta\}$ and $\{-g\Lambda\}$ were each composed of two morphemes from adjoining position classes. Strengthening this speculation are the facts that (1) $\{-ga\}$ at times seems almost empty of meaning while $\{-g\Lambda\}$ marks the past tense in a very straightforward way; (2) $\{-g\Lambda\eta\}$ has a distribution paralleling $\{-g\Lambda\}$ $\{-i\}$, suggesting that it is the reflex of a sequence of suffixes.

4.2.2.7 $\{-i\}$

The seventh inflectional position class has a single member, the suffix $\{-i\}$, which signals the presence of non-human old information within some as yet undefined grammatical proximity to the predicate. Old information in Skidegate may be either explicit or implicit.

4.2.2.7.1 Explicit Old Information

4.2.2.7.1.1 Nominal Old Information

Nominal old information is marked by $\{-gay\}$, as discussed in 3.2.1. The anaphoric function of $\{-i\}$ emerges especially clearly in relation to this type of old information:

/dʌws ɪgʌɪ kʌdʒu ʔu ɪʌ qɪŋʌn/ "I saw a little black cat."

{dʌws} "cat," {ɪgʌɪ} "black," {kʌ} "little"+ $\{-j\}$

derivational suffix, {hʌw} foreground, {ɪʌ} "first person

singular (active)," {qin}"see" -{gAn} "past tense"

*/daws iǰaǰ kAdju ʔu ʔa qingAnni/

(-{i} added.)

/dawǰay iǰaǰ kAdju ʔu ʔa qingAn/ "I saw the little black cat."

/dawǰay iǰal kAdju ʔu ʔa qingAnni/ "I saw the little black cat."

The same pattern of permitted and non-permitted suffixation of -{i} is found in such pairs as /ǰuday ʔisǰwigAnni/ "The box fell" vs. */guda ʔisǰwigAnni/, or /kiway ʔa qiǰagAnni/ "I found the clam" vs. */kyu ʔa qiǰagAnni/.

In both of these pairs the only difference between the grammatical and non-grammatical forms is that the former contain a nominal element to which -{gay} has been suffixed, while in the latter -{gay} is lacking.

4.2.2.7.1.2 Deictic Pronouns

Deictic pronouns are discussed in detail in Chapter 5. In these examples they are the forms /ʔasi/ "this (one)" and /haws/ "that (one)."

/ʔa ʔasi qingAnni/ "I saw this."

{ʔa} "first person singular (active)," {ʔa} "here"-{si} pronominalizes deictic particles, {qin}"see"-{gAn} "past tense"-{i}

/hawsiyu ʔalAn tagAnni/ "That's what we ate."

{h/w} "that"-{si} pronominalizes deictic particles, {h/w} foreground, {talʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ta} "eat"-{gʌn} "past tense" -{i}

4.2.2.7.1.3 Locational Phrases

Spatial reference, if sufficiently specific, can constitute old information permitting the use of -{i}. The particle {gu} (see Chapter 5) has various translations, but in isolation seems to function as a locational pronoun, translatable as "there," referring to a place which has been mentioned in previous discourse.

/gʌm qaxulnay gu ?isǰʌŋʌmni/ "There wasn't even a bathroom there."

{gʌm} "not," {qa} "move" + -{xut} "out" +{na} "house," {gu}, {?iǰ} existence predicate -{ǰʌŋ} "negative" -{gʌn} "past tense" -{i}

The location previously mentioned may be referred to overtly:

/nagay ǰaw ǰuda čisǰwigʌmni/ "A box fell in the house."
 {na} "house" -{gay} nominal old information, {ǰa} "in," {h/w} foreground, {ǰuda} "box," {čis} - shape element + {ǰwi} "fall" -{gʌn} "past tense" -{i}

It is worth noting that the form */na ǰaw ǰuda čisǰwigʌmni/, identical to the preceding example except for the presence

of $\{-\text{gay}\}$, is ungrammatical. So, for that matter, is $*/\check{\text{guda}} \text{ } \check{\text{cis}}\check{\text{g}}\text{wig}\Lambda\text{nni}/$, where the locational element has been removed.

4.2.2.7.2 Implicit Old Information

Implicit old information is inferred from discourse context, or from the non-linguistic conditions in which the reference is made.

$/\check{\text{ta}} \text{ tag}\Lambda\text{nni}/$ "I ate it"

$\{\check{\text{ta}}\}$ "first person singular (active)," $\{\text{ta}\}$ "eat"-
 $\{\text{g}\Lambda\text{n}\}$ "past tense" $\{-\text{i}\}$

Since $\{\text{ta}\}$ is inherently transitive, its use implies the presence of some patient not specifically mentioned. If, however, the particle $\{\text{ga}\}$ had preceded $\{\text{ta}\}$, intransitivizing the predicate, the form $*/\check{\text{ta}} \text{ ga } \text{tag}\Lambda\text{nni}/$ which would have resulted is ungrammatical.

4.2.2.7.3 Current Status of Old Information Anaphora

The use of $\{-\text{i}\}$ as old information anaphora seems to be a part of Skidegate grammar which has become somewhat irregular in certain idiolects. My principal co-worker in Skidegate maintained the system presented in 4.2.2.7, but the speaker with whom I did the next greatest amount of work frequently used $\{-\text{i}\}$ in contexts in which no old information, implicit or explicit, was present (although statistically more often with old information present than not.)

As noted in 4.2.2.1.6, $\{-g\wedge n\}$ parallels the distribution of $\{-g\wedge n\}\{-i\}$, so that all the constraints noted in 4.2.2.7 for $\{-i\}$ apply to $\{-g\wedge n\}$ in Becky Pearson's idiolect. Similarly, in Hazel Steven's idiolect these constraints are relaxed to the same degree that those on $\{-i\}$ are.

4.2.3 The Predicate Stem

4.2.3.1 Derivational Suffixes

The distinction between inflectional and derivational suffixes has been outlined earlier. Since the derivational suffixes are by definition less productive than the inflectional suffixes, it is more difficult to assign them to position classes in a straightforward way.

4.2.3.1.1 Position Class 1

The first derivational position class consists of all suffixes which appear in the position immediately to the right of the bases with which they co-occur. Since there are selectional restrictions on which suffixes can appear with any given base, all that common membership in this position class means is that there are no instances in my data of any suffix appearing to the left of any of these suffixes. Within the four

subsets of this position class, however, members of a single subset all co-occur with at least one common base.

4.2.3.1.1.1 Subset 1

Subset 1 contains two suffixes, $\{-ga\}$ and $\{-\check{g}a\}$.

4.2.3.1.1.1.1 $\{-ga\}$

$\{-ga\}$ confers on various non-predicate roots the distributional privileges of predicate bases. It has been discussed earlier in connection with nominal constructions containing $\{nan\}$. Applied to certain predicate roots, this suffix has the effect of creating a "middle voice" predicate.

/di ġudaga/ "I'm an Eagle."

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {ġud} "eagle" + $\{-ga\}$ - $\{-ga\}$ neutral tense/modal suffix

/ʔu kagaga/ "It's dry."

{ʔu} "it," {ka} "dry" + $\{-ga\}$ - $\{-ga\}$ neutral tense/modal suffix

/ʔu qyangagʌn/ "It could be seen"

{ʔu} "it," {qin} "see" + $\{-ga\}$ - $\{gʌn\}$ "past tense"

4.2.3.1.1.1.2 $\{-\check{g}a\}$

$\{-\check{g}a\}$ is used with roots which predicate some physical

attribute or condition. The suffix apparently refers to some change of state, in accordance with the meaning of the base.

/ʔu kãgasλga/ "It's drying."

{ʔu} "it," {kã} "dry" + {-ǵa} + {-sλλ} "permeative"

-{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

/hAw tãǵaga/ "It's getting wet."

{hAw} "that," {tã} "wet" + {-ǵa} -{ga} neutral

tense/modal suffix

4.2.3.1.1.2 Subset 2

The second subset of derivational suffixes in position class 1 follows bases which predicate motion of some kind. Statistically, these suffixes appear in ordinary speech most frequently with {qa}, the general predicate of motion.

4.2.3.1.1.2.1 -{či}

-{či} indicates movement into or through a space.

/nagay ġiyu la čigãčigAn/ "He moved into the house."

{na} "house" -{gay} nominal old information, {ġi}

"into, through," {hAw} foreground, {la} "third person

(active)," {čigã} "move"+{-či}-{gAn} "past tense"

/qači ġa/ "Come in!"

{qa} "move" + {-či}, {ġa} imperative

4.2.3.1.1.2.2 -{xul̥}

-{xul̥} refers to movement out of a space.

/la ʔa kilqaxul̥gʌn/ "I told him to get out."

{lʌ} "third person (neutral)," {ʔa} "first person singular (active)," {kil} "by speaking" + {qa} "move" + -{xul̥} -{gʌn} "past tense"

4.2.3.1.1.2.3 -{ʔʌ}

-{ʔʌ} indicates movement upwards.

/qayday gud ʔa qaʔʌgʌn/ "I climbed the tree."

{qayd} "tree" -{gay} nominal old information, {gu} "there," -{d} relates action to the specified location, {ʔa} "first person singular (active)," {qa} "move"+-{ʔʌ}-{gʌn} "past tense"

4.2.3.1.1.2.4 -{ʔʌʔ}

-{ʔʌʔ} indicates movement downwards.

/la ʔʌ qaʔʌʔʌgʌndasi/ "They let him off first..."

(transliterated from Swanton 1911,
p. 246.)

{lʌ} "third person (neutral)," {ʔʌ} "they," {qa} "move" + -{ʔʌʔ}+ -{ʔʌgʌn} "first" + -{da} "causative" -{s} dependent structure -{i} old information anaphora

4.2.3.1.1.2.5 -{ǵuŋ}

-{ǵuŋ} specifies more or less random motion.

/na ʔa ǵid lʌ qaǵuŋga/ "He's walking around inside the house."

{na} "house," {xa} distributive, {gi} "through, into,"
 -{d} relates action to the specified location, {la}
 "third person (active)," {qa} "move" + -{gu}-{ga}
 neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.3.1.1.2.6 -{ʌʌxa}

-{ʌʌxa} indicates motion towards a particular goal or destination.

/gu ʔu ʔalʌŋ qaʌʌxagʌŋ/ "We walked there (to that place.)"
 {gu} "there," {hʌw} foreground, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {qa} "move" + -{ʌʌxa} -{gʌŋ} "past tense"

4.2.3.1.1.2.7 -{ʌʌ}

-{ʌʌ} indicates motion in a vehicle of some sort.

/la la qaʌʌgwas/ "They took her aboard..."

{ʌʌ} "third person (neutral)," {la} "third person (active),"
 {qa} "move" + -{ʌʌ}-{gu} "plural" -{s} dependent structure (transliterated from Swanton 1911, p.247.)

4.2.3.1.1.2.8 -{giŋʌŋ}

The meaning of this suffix is unknown at present; it may be analyzable further.

/kiway gud hu ʔʌ qagiŋʌŋʌmi/ "I was walking on the road."

{kyu} "road" -{gay} nominal old information, {gu} "there,"
 {d} relates action to the specified location, {hʌw} foreground,

{iə} "first person singular (active)," {qa} "move" +
 -{giǵʌŋ} -{gʌŋ} "past tense" - {i} old information
 anaphora

4.2.3.1.1.3 Subset 3

The third subset of derivational position class
 1 contains three suffixes, all of which form predicates
 from shape classifiers.

4.2.3.1.1.3.1 -{ǵju}

-{ǵju} forms predicates which, while occasionally
 inflected, more often appear as modifiers of nominal
 forms. These nominal forms are always singular in
 reference.

/iǵa yuǵu gu ǵayǵudiga/ "There's a big rock sitting there."

{iǵa} "rock," {yu} "big" + -{ǵju}, {gu} "there,"

{ǵay} shape element + {ǵudi} "stationary" -{ga}

neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.3.1.1.3.2 -{dʌl}

-{dʌl} has the same function as -{ǵju}, but applies
 to nominal forms with plural reference.

/stiwaj kʌddʌllʌŋ gʌm yudʌlǵʌŋʌŋ/ "They're small, not large,
 the sea-urchins."

{styu} "sea-urchin" -{gay} nominal old information, {kʌ} -

"small" + -{dʌl} -{gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora,

{gʌm} "not," {yu}- "big" + -{dʌl} - {ǵʌŋ} "negative" -

{gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora

4.2.3.1.1.3.3 -{ʔʌŋ}

-{ʔʌŋ} only appears in my data suffixed to the shape elements {yu}- "big" and {kʌ}- "small."

Unlike the suffixes described in the preceding two sections, -{ʔʌŋ} seems to create predicates of magnitude which are not restricted to physical dimension. Thus, in /lʌ kajuŋayayuʔʌŋga/ "He sings really well/ the predicate {yu}- + -{ʔʌŋ} functions as an intensifier and corresponds to the translation "really."

4.2.3.1.1.4 Subset 4

The fourth subset in the first derivational position class contains two suffixes which mark the base as singular or plural respectively, depending on the number of participants. These suffixes occur in my data with only two roots, {qʌw} "sit" and {na} "live," but they probably can be applied to others.

4.2.3.1.1.4.1 -{ʔu}

-{ʔu} indicates a single participant in the action.

/ʌu gu ǰaw naʔuga/ "He lives on the boat."

{ʌu} "boat," {gu} "there," {ǰa} "at, in," {hʌw}

foreground, {la} "third person (active)," {na} "live" +

-{ʔu} -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.3.1.1.4.2 -{xan}

-{xan} indicates the participation of several individuals in the action.

/ʔannu lA naʔAnǰuga/ "They live here."

{ʔan} "here," {hAw} foreground, {la} "third person (active)," {na} "live"+- {xan} -{ǰu} "plural" -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.3.1.2 Position Class 2

The second position class has two members, -{sλλ} and -{λagAn}. This is a de facto grouping: both suffixes follow the suffixes in position class 1 and precede the causative suffix. It seems likely that further data will indicate some co-occurrence of the two suffixes.

4.2.3.1.2.1 -{sλλ}

-{sλλ} is often preceded by -{ǰa}, discussed under 4.2.3.1.1.1.2. -{sλλ} appears to indicate that some process, specified in the preceding part of the stem, totally permeates whatever object is the site of the process.

/ʔu kaǰasλaga/ "It's drying."

(See 4.2.3.1.1.1.2 for analysis.)

Forms containing $\{-s\lambda\}$ occasioned some difference in the interpretation provided by speakers; one glossed /di ġayaġas\lambda\ga/ as "I'm getting fat," while another offered the gloss "I'm getting back to my normal weight."

4.2.3.1.2.2 $\{-\lambda\text{ag}\Lambda\eta\}$

This suffix translates "the first" or "first."
/la \lambda qat\Lambda\lambda\text{ag}\Lambda\text{ndasi/ "They let him off first."
(See 4.2.3.1.1.2.4 for translation.)

4.2.3.1.3 Position Class 3

The third derivational position class contains a single member, the suffix $\{-da\}$. $\{-da\}$ is highly productive, contributing in most uses a causative element to the meaning of the predicate in which it appears, or an element clearly related to the idea of causation or deliberate effort.

/ġuday \lambdaa \check{c}isġwidan/ "I dropped the box."

{ġuda} "box"-{gay} nominal old information, {\lambdaa} "first person singular (active)," {\check{c}is}- shape element +{\ġwi} "fall" + $\{-da\}$ $\{-g\Lambda\eta\}$ neutral old information anaphora

/la qwandag\Lambda\text{mi/ "He got lots."

{la} "first person singular (active)," {qwan} "lots" + $\{-da\}$ - {g\Lambda\eta} "past tense" - {i} old information anaphora

/ʔan la stidaga/ "He pretends to be sick."

{ʔan} meaning unknown, {la} "first person (active),"

{sti} "sick" -{da} -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

The "deliberate effort" aspect of -{da} seems in some contexts to develop into a quasi-reflexive meaning:

/lʌ kil ʔʌ yahdaga/ "I believe his talk."

{lʌ} "third person (neutral)," {kil} "voice, word, speech,"

{ʔʌ} "first person singular (active)," {yan} "true" +

-{da} -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

which may be interpreted literally as "I make his words true to or for myself." Note the /n/ ~ /h/ alternation evidenced here in the variant forms for "true."

4.2.3.1.4 Position Class 4

The fourth position class contains two suffixes, -{ǵa} and -{ʔin}, which seem to be translocatives. They cannot appear with predicate bases which specify qualities or attributes.

4.2.3.1.4.1 -{ǵa}

-{ǵa} indicates that participation in the indicated action is accompanied by, or dependent upon, some preliminary movement or travel.

/ʔa ga taǵaga/ "I'm on my way to eat."

{ʔa} "first person singular (active)," {ga} indefinite

reference," {ta} "eat" + -{ǵa} -{ga} neutral tense/modal

suffix.

4.2.3.1.4.2 -{ʔin}

-{ʔin} also indicates the association of participation with travel, but with the more specific reference to use of a vehicle of some sort, generally a boat.

/lʌ ʃʌwʔingʌn/ "He went out fishing."

{lʌ} "third person (active)," {ʃʌw} "go fishing" +
 -{ʔin} -{gʌn} "past tense"

4.2.3.1.5 Residual Suffixes

There are a number of derivational suffixes in Skidegate which cannot be ordered with respect to each other or to the suffixes already discussed on the basis of available data.

4.2.3.1.5.1 {ʃju}

-{ʃju} only appears following -{gʌ} or -{ʔin}, and indicates return from the action specified in the rest of the predicate.

/ʃʌ gʌtʌgʌʃju/ "I've just come from eating."

{ʃʌ} "first person singular (active)," {gʌ} indefinite reference, {tʌ} "eat" + -{gʌ} "translocative" + -{ʃju}
 -{gʌ} neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.3.1.5.2 -{ʃʌgʌ}

-{ʃʌgʌ} indicates completeness, inclusiveness of the

action indicated.

/kaday gwa ?u taʔAǵa/ "Do the deer eat it all?"

{kad} "deer" -{gay} nominal old information, {gwa}

interrogative, {?u} "it," {ta} "eat" -{ʔAǵa}

4.2.3.1.5.3 -{gAŋ}

This suffix, as noted in the discussion of the durative aspect suffix -{di}, produces predicates corresponding to a succession of discrete actions when suffixed to forms indicating punctual events. An example of a predicate containing this suffix is provided in

4.2.2.1.2. Other examples of the use of this suffix

are: /ǵadkadas/ "jump," /ǵadkadaǵin/ "jump (repeated-

ly);" /ǵwičikda/ "wink (once)," /ǵwičikdaŋ/ "wink

(repeatedly)." It seems appropriate to give this

suffix the label "iterative."

4.2.3.1.5.4 -{ǰA1}

-{ǰA1} gives an imperative significance to the predicate.

/la ʔa ga taǰAlga/ "I told him to eat."

{1A} "third person (neutral)," {ʔa} "first person singular

(active)," {ga} indefinite reference, {ta} "eat" +

{ǰA1} -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.3.1.5.5 -{ʔAŋa}

-{ʔAŋa} corresponds to "can" or "be able to."

/ʔa ga taʔʌŋaga/ "I can eat."

{ʔa} "first person singular (active)," {ga}

indefinite reference, {ta} "eat" + -{ʔʌŋa} -{ga}

neutral tense/modal suffix

4.2.3.1.5.6 -{dʌŋ}

-{dʌŋ}, when suffixed to nominal forms, creates a predicate which indicates the activity of going hunting or gathering for the indicated thing:

/kʷ/ "herring spawn," /kʷdʌŋ/ "gather herring

spawn." -{dʌŋ} participates in at least one

prefix + suffix base form: when added to the

shape element {ska}- , applied to small round

objects, it forms a predicate /skadʌŋ/ "look

for berries." Such examples suggest that originally

{ska} and probably many of the other shape elements

as well were nominal forms.

4.2.3.2 Prefixes

There are two sets of prefix position classes. The first contains three position classes, the second contains two. The following description of prefixal position classes presents them in order from the rightmost leftward.

4.2.3.2.1 Prefix Set 1

4.2.3.2.1.1 Position Class 1

The first prefix position class contains shape classificatory elements, which have been briefly mentioned in Chapter 3. Skidegate bases are divisible into those which require specification of the shape category to which the pertinent nominal form belongs and those which do not. The shape categories represented in the grammar seem to involve various physical parameters of form and size, as well as a distinction between animate and inanimate.

Shape classifiers are prefixed not only in the case of classificatory bases but in the use of numerals in counting. There is evidence that only a generation or two ago the use of numeral forms required the appearance of prefixes demarcating the shape of the entities counted; currently, however, the obligatory character of this prefixation seems to have passed out of active use in the language, although retained as frozen forms in a limited number of dialects. There seems to be a certain amount of idiolect variation with respect to this point.

4.2.3.2.1.1.1 {fga}-

{fga}- classifies objects which are seen as defined by branching or forking from the end of a central axis.

The branching may involve either parallel alignment of branches (chair, fork, bed, stove, binoculars) or angular alignment (scissor, adze, halibut hook.) Apparently the legs on the various types of furniture classified by {iga}- are considered the most significant aspect of their shape.

/ḡudḡagaḡanʔway ɪa ɪgaḡwidaŋ/ "I dropped the chair."
ḡudḡagaḡanʔu "chair" (see 3.1.2.2 for analysis) - {gay} nominal old information, {ɪa} "first person singular (active)," {iga}- + {ḡwi} "fall" + {-da} "causative" - {gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora

iga - also classifies /taydan/ "bed," /takidḡaʔu/ "fork," /čanudan/ "stove," /xuta/ "adze" and /taʔu/ "halibut hook."

4.2.3.2.1.1.2 {ḡa}-

{ḡa}- classifies objects which are flat, and in which neither of the pertinent dimensions is relatively larger vis-à-vis the other.

/kiway ɪa ḡaḡwidaŋ/ "I dropped the door."

(The analysis here is the same as that of the preceding section, except that {kyu} "door" appears in place of the form for "chair," and {ḡa}- appears in place of {iga}-.)

{ğa}- classifies /xil/ "leaf, medicine," /ğuda ğaʔal/
 "box lid," /xana sğaŋʔu/ "mirror," /sğaw/ "knife,"
 /taqadaʔu/ "splitting knife," /ğasλλʔu/ "shovel,"
 /su/ "lake," /qAnğagi/ "apron."

4.2.3.2.1.1.3 {gu}-

{gu}- classifies roundish but not absolutely round
 objects; these are generally flat on one side, or hollow.

/niʃaŋʔway gaygugaŋa/ "The mask is floating."

niʃaŋʔu "mask" - {gay} nominal old information,

{gay}- "by floating" + {gu}- + {giŋ}"float" -

{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

{gu}- also classifies /tʌl/ "flounder," /daʃiŋ/
 "hat," /ğalgaʔin/ "abalone," /qunalaŋʔu/ "button."

4.2.3.2.1.1.4 {qay}-

{qay}- appears to classify spheroidal
 or cylindrical forms.

/gʌwʃaway ʔa qayğwidaŋ/ "I dropped the drum."

(The analysis here is the same as for the example in
 4.2.3.2.1.1.1 except that the nominal form here is
gʌwʃaʔu "drum.")

{qay}- also classifies /kyuqayjaʔu/ "hammer,"

/kyu/ "clam," /ʔğa/ "stone, rock," /tağʊ/ "copper."

It is difficult to motivate the inclusion of coppers

in this group; however, coppers are treated as round objects in other languages of the Northwest Coast which have shape classification systems.

4.2.3.2.1.1.5 {xum}-

{xum}- classifies a mass or aggregate of a single variety of thing.

/gi?insgway ɬa xumḡwidaŋ/ "I dropped a bunch of clothing."

(The analysis here is the same as that of the example in 4.2.3.1.1.1, except that the nominal form is {gi?nsgu} "clothing.")

4.2.3.2.1.1.6 {ɬqa}-

{ɬqa}- classifies two objects in my data, tree branches and combs. Both consist of a central axis along which smaller elements project more or less perpendicularly.

/ɬajay ɬqaḡwigʌŋ/ "The branch is falling."

{ɬaj} "branch" - {gay} nominal old information, {ɬqa}- + {ḡwi} - {gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora

4.2.3.2.1.1.7 {tay}-

It is difficult to explain the distribution of {tay}-, which in my data classifies three objects: shirt, kerchief and axe.

/xwatisgway gaytayginga/ "The shirt is floating."

(The analysis here is the same as that of 4.2.3.2.1.1.3 except that the nominal form is xwatisgu "shirt".)

4.2.3.2.1.1.8 sda- ~ sga-

This classifier, which has two different and apparently unconditioned phonological forms, applies to rigid circular or nearly circular objects.

/sʌgigay ʔa sgaʒwidaŋ/ "I dropped the ring."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.1 for analysis; sʌgya "ring" is the nominal form here.)

sda -/ sga - also classifies /xigya/ "bracelet," /kungi/ "nose ring," /sqil ʔaxul/ "black cod hook."

4.2.3.2.1.1.9 {ʔa}-

{ʔa}- classifies long, flexible objects.

/qwayay gayʔayginga/ "The rope is floating."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.3 for analysis; {qway} "rope" is the nominal form here.)

{ʔa} also classifies /ʔaxad/ "net," /ʌʒigaʔu/ "belt."

4.2.3.2.1.1.10 {ska}-

{ska}- classifies long, cylindrical objects.

/ʒasʒuʒaʔway gayskaginga/ "The lamp is floating."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.3 for analysis; ʒasʒuʒaʔu "lamp" is the nominal form here.)

{ska}- also classifies /skaʔʌʒu/ bottle,

/skaŋanʃuskyuʔal/ "spruce cone," /quʃanʃu/ "pipe."

4.2.3.2.1.1.11 {ku}-

The common features of the objects classified by {ku}- are not apparent.

/qudaʔway ʔa kuŋwidaŋ/ "I dropped the chisel."

(Same analysis as in 4.2.3.2.1.1.1; the nominal form here is qudaʔu.)

{ku}- also classifies /gwaʔal/ "bag," /sayin/ "nail," /sŋan/ "red cod," and, according to Hazel Stevens, "anything wrapped up like a parcel."

4.2.3.2.1.1.12 {sqa}-

{sqa}- classifies long, narrow, rigid objects.

/sqanʔway sqagwiga/ "The stick is falling."

(Same analysis as in 4.2.3.2.1.1.6; the nominal form here is sqanʔu "stick.")

{sqa} also classifies /ʔal/ "canoe paddle," /qa/ "harpoon," /kidsŋalanʔu/ "poker," /časki/ "cane," /čitalʌŋ/ "arrow," /sʌʌna/ "needle".

4.2.3.2.1.1.13 {taw}-

{taw}- classifies relatively long, teardrop-shaped objects.

/taŋmay gaytawgiŋa/ "The feather is floating."

(Same analysis as in 4.2.3.2.1.1.3; the nominal form here is {təḡun}.)

{taw}- also classifies /sʌgʌl/ "spoon."

4.2.3.2.1.1.14 {ska}-

{ska}- classifies small, round objects.

/kayay ʔa skaḡwidaŋ/ "I dropped the crabapple."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.1 for analysis; the nominal form here is kay "crabapple.")

{ska}- also classifies /sḡiʌḡu/ "red huckleberry," /sgʌwsid/ "potato," /qay/ "cranberry," /ḡan/ "berry."

4.2.3.2.1.1.15 {ʔgi}-

{ʔgi}- classifies very large cylindrical objects.

/čamuway ʔgiḡaxumaŋa/ "The log is rolling."

{čamu} "log" - {ga} nominal old information, {ʔgi}- + {gaxumaŋ} "roll" - {ga} neutral old information anaphora

{ʔgi}- also classifies {gyaḡʌŋ} "totem pole" (conceivably analyzable as {gya} "stand" + - ḡʌŋ where the latter form is found also in the suffix -{giḡʌŋ} discussed above.)

4.2.3.2.1.1.16 {sʌʌ}-

{sʌʌ}- classifies only one object in my data, firewood lying in a pile or mass together.

/čamuway gaysʌḡiŋa/ "The firewood is floating."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.3 for analysis; the nominal form here is {čanu} "fire, firewood.")

4.2.3.2.1.1.17 {ci}-

{ci}- classifies container-like objects.

/gwalay gaciginga/ "The box is floating."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.13 for analysis; the nominal form here is gwaʔal type of small box, where the form ʔal may also be present in ǰaʔal "lid.")

{ci}- also classifies /xwatisgu/ "shirt," /citisgu/ "coat," /qigu/ "spruce root basket," /ʔkidgi/ "dress," /čiʔ/ "pillow." It appears that rigidity may be an important parameter separating the objects classified by {ci}- from those classified by {čis}-; with one exception (/gwaʔal/) none of the {ci}- shaped objects are rigid.

4.2.3.2.1.1.18 {čis}-

{čis}- classifies rigid containers which are open at the top.

/ǰuday ʔa čisǰwidan/ "I dropped the box."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.1 for analysis; the nominal form here is {ǰuda} "box.")

{čis}- also classifies /tawta/ "greasebox," /ǰanaǰa/ "pail," /čisǰalaʔu/ "cooking pot"

4.2.3.2.1.1.19 {gi}-

{gi}- classifies non-rigid objects which are relatively flat and rectangular in shape, and also {ʎu} "canoe," which I find quite difficult to explain.

/gyaʔaday ʎa giḡwidaŋ/ "I dropped the blanket."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.20 for analysis; the nominal form here is {gyaʔad} "blanket.")

{gi}- also classifies /gʌmtisgu/ "kerchief," /gixyaŋʔu/ "material," /qunḡagi/ "apron."

4.2.3.2.1.1.20 {qut}-

{qut}- classifies only one object in my data, /dal sgilḡa/, a type of flower. The speaker commented that {qut}- would be used to classify any flower.

4.2.3.2.1.1.21 {ʔis}-

{ʔis}- classifies inanimate objects, or objects which are regarded as possessing only marginal animateness, e.g. mussels.

/qwayay ʎa ʔisḡwidaŋ/ "I dropped the rope."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.1 for analysis.)

4.2.3.2.1.1.22 {ʎʌ}-

This suffix classifies animate entities.

/ʎagay ʎa ʔisḡwidaŋ/ "I dropped the dog."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.1 for analysis; the nominal form here

is {xa} "dog.")

4.2.3.2.1.1.23 {sɥd}-

{sɥd}- classifies only one type of object in my data, /sǧiɬǧu/ "red huckleberries."

4.2.3.2.1.1.24 {xɬ}-

{xɬ}- applies generally to small objects.

/ɬa xǧwidagɬ/ "I dropped something small."

ɬa "first person singular (active), {xɬ}- + {ǧwi} "fall" + {-da} causative - {gɬ} "past tense"

4.2.3.2.1.1.25 {kɬ}-

{kɬ}- is also applied to any small object.

/ɬa kǧwidagɬ/"I dropped something small."

(Same analysis as in 4.2.3.2.1.1.24.)

Notice that when the syllable boundary is strengthened following kɬ- (see 1.1.3 for another example of this phenomenon) by epenthesis of a copy of the following consonant, the copy has the phonetic form [q], not [qʷ], as would have been the case if labialization were integral to the segment rather than representing a following /w/. This example adds further to the evidence for analyzing secondary articulations in SkH as the result of separate segments.

4.2.3.2.1.1.26 {yɥ}-

{yu}- applies generally to large objects.

/ʔa yuǵwidaŋ/ "I dropped something large."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.24 for analysis.)

4.2.3.2.1.1.27 {qil}-

{qil}- also applies to large objects.

/ʔa qilǵwidaŋ/ "I dropped something large."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.24 for analysis.)

4.2.3.2.1.1.28 {ṭAb}-

{ṭAb}- applies to straight objects.

/hAʷsi ṭAbǵwigAŋ/ "That straight thing fell."

{hAʷ} "that," -{si} pronominalizes deictic particles,

{ṭAb}- + {ǵwi}"fall" - {gAŋ} neutral old information

anaphora

4.2.3.2.1.1.29 {ṭAm}-

{ṭAm}- applies to thin or narrow objects.

/hAʷsi ṭAmǵwigAŋ/ "Something skinny fell."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.28 for analysis.)

4.2.3.2.1.1.30 {dAb}-

{dAb}- applies to short objects.

/hAʷsi dAbǵwigAŋ/ "That short thing fell."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.28 for analysis.)

4.2.3.2.1.1.31 {dAm}-

{dAm}- applies to fat or wide objects.

4.2.3.2.1.1.32 {sgAb}-

{sgAb}- classifies crooked looking objects. It has the phonemic shape /sgAb/ when used to form predicates with the suffix {-ju}, but the shape /sgAɬ/ when prefixed to {gwi}.

/hAɬsi sgAɬgwigAn/ "Something crooked fell."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.28 for analysis.)

4.2.3.2.1.1.33 {sgAm}-

{sgAm}- classifies things which are perceived as round and open.

/hAɬsi sgAmgwigAn/ "Something round fell."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.28 for analysis.)

4.2.3.2.1.1.34 {ʔad}-

{ʔad}- classifies objects which are perceived as too wide, or large in some unpleasing way. This classifier is often used to refer to other people in a distinctly nasty way.

/hAɬsi ʔadgwigAn/ "Something big and ugly fell."

(See 4.2.3.2.1.1.28 for analysis.)

When {ʔad}- is combined with {-ju} to form a predicate, an epenthetic [ɬ] appears between the two morphemes, producing a form which can be phonemicized either as /ʔadɬju/ or /ʔaɬju/ "fat and ugly." In terms of

pattern congruence and canonical consistency, the former phonemicization is by far the preferable.

The classifiers presented in the foregoing discussion reveal some interesting possibilities for further analysis as well as speculations concerning their integrity as a morphological class. These questions have implications for Haida prehistory.

The suffixes in 4.2.3.2.28 - 33 can be divided into three pairs, each pair containing morphemes which differ from each other only in the presence or absence of nasality in the final segment. It is possible to see an equivalence between the type of prefix with final m and those with final b:

$\dot{t}Ab : \dot{t}Am \quad :: \quad dAb : dAm \quad :: \quad sgAb : sgAm$
 straight : narrow :: short : wide :: crooked : round

While these proportions are in so sense obvious, they are not at all implausible. The forms in b appear to refer to configurations of line--a single dimension--while those in m seem to identify two-dimensional correlates, or orthogonal correlates. In English "tall and thin," "short and fat" are conventional pairings, so the idea of correlations of this type ought to be familiar to us. It would

indeed be remarkable for the apparent phonological/semantic linkings incorporated in these prefixes to have developed coincidentally. I suggest, therefore, that -m and -b were at one time morphemes of SkH. This possibility would account for the proliferation of bilabial segments--especially b--in the classifiers but virtually nowhere else in the language far more economically than assuming $\text{t}^{\text{h}}\text{ab}$ and the others to have always been monomorphemic. As independent segments they have a better chance of being loan elements than if their status were purely phonological, and the scarcity of b, in particular, is far easier to understand in terms of foreign origin than otherwise. Further evidence supporting the segmentation of the final bilabials is provided by the alternation /sgAb/ ~ /sgAt/ noted in 4.2.3.1.1.32. There is no natural phonological explanation for this alternation; and the only alternative to a thoroughly unnatural rule to produce [b] ~ [t] in this one instance is to allow b grammatical independence from the rest of the prefix.

It should also be noted that the shape classifiers as a whole seem to be a rather heterogeneous class. There is a considerable difference in the specificity

of the first twenty-three prefixes vis-à-vis the remainder. The latter refer to objects in a very general way, compared, for example, with {t̥q̥a}-. When particular objects are referred to in sentences, the most knowledgeable speakers tend to use the more specific classifier, rather than appealing to the relatively general type. If, as seems likely, -m and -b are serious candidates for grammatical status at some point in Haida's history, they were concatenated only with the latter variety of shape element. This seems to argue for an earlier distinction in the southern dialects of Haida between these two classes of shape prefix.

In certain instances there is an appreciable resemblance between the shape classifiers and the forms they classify. {t̥aw}- and {t̥aḡun} "feather" and {sq̥a}- and {sq̥aŋʷu} "stick" exhibit this resemblance, and while I did not collect any forms containing kun as a classifier, it is my very strong impression that kun does appear as such, applying to objects which are perceived as pointed. {kum} is also the root for "point, nose."

These facts must be taken into consideration when compar-

ing Haida shape-classification to, for example, classification in Athapaskan. There is probably no Athapaskan language which makes use of more than fifteen parameters, and those which have been discussed in print (see Davidson et al., 1963) use twelve or fewer, manifested through variation in the shape of the verb stem. Haida, on the other hand, gives evidence so far of more than forty shape classes. Within the classifier system there appear to be subsets exhibiting both phonological and semantic differences. Furthermore, the shape elements are only very loosely connected with the rest of the predicate, and seem to overlap with nominal forms to some extent; they also appear in constructions which raise doubts as to their uniquely prefixal status. In view of these considerations, one is tempted to hypothesize a late origin for the classifiers, at least as a morphological category of the predicate, possibly as the result of areal pressure from other languages in the vicinity which possess systematic shape classification in verb forms.

4.2.3.2.2.1.2 Classificatory Roots

The following roots in Skidegate require the use of shape classifiers: {ǵwi} "fall," {giŋ} "hold, support," {ǵaxunan} "roll," {xid} "vertical movement," {ǵudi}

"maintain a stationary position on a surface,"
 {dal} "continuous horizontal motion," {tʰas}
 meaning unknown, {ʔʌŋ} "position above," {gid}
 "lean against," {ǵaw} "lower," {gastʰa} "kick
 over," {ǵulan} "rotary motion," {xyu} "hang,"
 {ju} meaning uncertain, perhaps "catch," {ci}
 "move from one place to another," {sgid} "shove,
 push against, cause sudden contact," /ǵiǵi/ ~
 /ǵǵal/ "wind, turn," {sʌʌ} "put (inside), arrange,"
 {sta} "remove something from something else." There
 are undoubtedly several others.

These bases display resemblances to each other,
 in some cases, or to other forms in Skidegate. {ǵwi},
 {ǵudi} and {ǵaw} have considerable phonological
 similarity towards each other and all three refer to
 motion or position involving the ground, or some
 surface. {ʔʌŋ} "position above" is phonologically
 close to -{ʔʌ} "vertical movement." The sta of
 {gastʰa} "kick over" is the same shape as the root
 for "foot" and the instrumental prefix indicating
 "by kicking." {ci} "move from one place to another"
 semantically resembles the suffix -{ci}. I do not
 wish to attribute historical priority to any one
 form at the expense of others which it resembles,
 but merely point out, here and elsewhere, the strong

tendency in Skidegate (and Haida generally, I suspect,) for the same structural elements to appear in a variety of grammatical functions.

One other feature of shape classification in Skidegate should be noted, namely its ergative nature. Swanton sums up the case as follows: "[The noun] is here represented by the use of the classifiers which express the subject of the intransitive verb, or the object of the transitive verb as a member of a certain class of things, the principal of classification being form." (Swanton 1911, p. 216.) It is of interest that in other Northwest Coast languages a tendency towards ergativity may be found within the confines of a single subsection of the grammar. Kinkade (1975) presents evidence for a "limited ergative system" governing the operation of certain types of pluralization in Upper Chehalis. Such "limited" systems may reflect typological tendencies in the which deserve fuller investigation.

4.2.3.2.1.3 Position Class 2

The second position class contains instrumental prefixes.

4.2.3.2.1.3.1 {da}-

{da}- may be translated "by pushing."

/g̃uday ʔa dačisdaɫgʌŋ/ "I'm pushing the box."

{g̃uda} "box" - {gay} nominal old information,
 {ʔa} "first person singular (active)," {da}- +
 {čis}- shape element + {dal} "continuous horizontal
 movement" - {gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora

4.2.3.2.1.3.2 {dʌŋ}-

{dʌŋ}- may be translated "by pulling."

/g̃uday ʔa dʌŋčisdaɫgʌŋ/ "I'm pulling the box."

(See 4.2.3.1.2.1 for analysis.)

4.2.3.2.1.3.3 {ʌu}-

{ʌu}- refers to travel by boat.

/ʔʌ ʌuʔisʔʌʔagʌŋ/ "They came up on a boat."

{ʔʌ} "they," {ʌu}- + {ʔij} "existence predicate" + -
 {ʔʌʔa} "movement towards a particular destination" -
 {gʌŋ} "past tense"

{ʌu} is also the nominal form for "boat."

4.2.3.2.1.3.4 {gay}-

{gay}- may be translated "by floating."

/niʔaŋʔway gayguginga/ "The mask is floating."

(See 4:2:3:2:1.1:3 for analysis.)

4:2:3:2.1.3.5 {qu}-

{qu}- refers to the use of the teeth

/g̃aɫdaʔway ʔa qugiginga/ "I'm holding the blanket with
 my teeth."

{ǵaɪdaʔu} "blanket" -{gay} nominal old information,
 {ɬa} "first person singular (active)," {ǵu} - +
 {gi}- shape element + {gin} "hold" -{ga} neutral tense/
 modal suffix

4.2.3.2.1.3.6 {ʔun}-

{ʔun}- refers to the use of the back.

/sǵaŋʔu ɬa ʔunsǵagindalga/ "I'm carrying the stick on my
 back."

{sǵaŋʔu} "stick," {ɬa} "first person singular (active),"
 {ʔun}- + {sǵa}- shape element + {gin} "hold" + {dal}"con-
 tinuous horizontal motion" -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

It is likely that this form also appears as a particle
 in the construction ʔun gu "on top of " (see Chapter 5.)

4.2.3.2.1.3.7 {squd}-

{squd}- refers to the use of the arms.

/ǵuday ɬa squdčisginga/ "I'm carrying the box."

(See the preceding section for analysis. The nominal
 form here is {ǵuda} "box;" the appropriate shape
 element {čis}- is used.)

4.2.3.2.1.3.8 {kid}-

{kid}-, which seems sometimes to have phonemic /kids/,
 appears to refer to the use of a pointed object.

/la la kidǵatačas/ "He threw it in with a stick..."

(Transliterated from Swanton 1911, p. 222.)

{1A} "third person (neutral)," {1a} "third person (active)," {kid}- + {ġata} "throw (?)" +-{ċi} "movement into" -{s} dependent structure

The instrumental prefixes raise a difficult issue, first addressed by Haeberlin. Forms which occur to the left of the shape classifiers as part of the predicate, and which cannot themselves be inflected as predicates, must be regarded as members of the instrumental prefix class. This is true both for forms like {sġud}-, which occurs nowhere else in the grammar, and forms like {λu}-, which occurs elsewhere as the nominal root "boat" but which cannot be compounded with predicate bases. However, when a form which occurs to the left of a shape classifier is itself recognizable as a predicate base, there is a serious question as to whether it can be automatically assigned to the instrumentals, or whether it may not be part of stem with the structure Base₁ + Base₂, where the second base contains a shape classifier as initial prefix. For example, on strictly formal grounds {ġad} in /qAlgay ġadskajugulanga/ "The bottle is spinning around" appears to be an instrumental, since it precedes a shape classifier. But skaju is, fairly clearly, the base composed of the prefix {ska}- and the suffix -{ju}, and such bases

do not, as far as I am aware, ever appear with any additional prefixation. {ǵad}, in all probability, is also represented in forms such as /ǵadkadas/ "jump (once)," and the root for "run" has /ǵad/ as one of its two allomorphs. If all three instances are identified as a single form which means something like "rapid motion," it is evident that the appearance of {ǵad}- in the foregoing example is the result of compounding in a structure with the shape $Base_1 + Base_2 + Base_3$, where the first base consists of {ǵad}, the second of {ska}- + {-ju}, and the third consists of {ǵulaŋ} "rotary motion." Swanton's treatment of the instrumentals resulted in a much longer list (see footnote 1), containing many forms which I do not believe to be genuine prefixes, but rather initial bases in elaborate compound stems. They have perhaps been converted into de facto prefixes by a freezing of compound formation. To some extent, then, their status is an open question, for it is not possible at this point to determine how productive stem-compounding in Skidegate among the current speakership.

4.2.3.2.1.3.9 {ǵa}-

{ǵa}- refers to the use of the arms.

/ǵuday ǵa ǵacišjuga/ "I caught the box."

{ǵuda} "box" {-gay} nominal old information, {ǵa} "first person singular (active)," {ǵa}- + {cis}- shape element +

{ju}"catch" -{ga} neutral tense modal suffix

4.2.3.2.1.3.10 -{λλ}-

{λλ}- indicates use of the hand and fingers.

/talaλ λλgũłgã/ "We fix it."

{talaλ} "first person plural (active)," {λλ}- +

{gũłgã}"fix" -{gλ} neutral old information anaphora

4.2.3.2.1.4 Position Class 3

The third position class contains two suffixes which indicate control over some action or situation.

4.2.3.2.1.4.1 {giŋ}-

{giŋ}- indicates causation. It appears to differ in meaning from -{da} in that it generally refers to control over the actions of others.

/la ʔa giŋλuqałλxãgã/ "I made him come."

{la} "third person (neutral)," {ʔa} "first person singular

(active)," {giŋ}- + {λu}- "by boat" + {qa} "move" +

{łxã} "movement towards a particular destination" -

{gã} "past tense"

4.2.3.2.1.4.2 {kil}-

{kil}-, which is a form of the root for "voice, word," indicates a verbal direction given to someone. It is not absolutely clear whether {kil}- belongs in this position class or with the instrumentals.

/la ʒʌ kilqaydʌn/ "I told him to go away."

{1ʌ} "third person (neutral)," {ʒʌ} "first person singular (active)," {kil}- + {qayd} "go away" + -{gʌn} "past tense"

4.2.3.2.2 Prefix Set 2

The second set of prefix position classes contains two position classes.

4.2.3.2.2.1 Position Class 1

The first position contains a single prefix, {gya}-, which applies to a limited set of transitive bases and intransitivizes them.

/1ʌ gyaʒʌga/ "She's sewing."

{1ʌ} "third person (active)," {gya}- + {ʒʌ}- "sew"
- {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

{gya}- also co-occurs with the bases {ʒay} "knit," {q̄id} "carve," {daʒ} "buy." In the last case, the form /gyadaʒ/ means "sell," an unexpected gloss since in its other uses {gya} simply produces an intransitive form. Syntactically, however, /gyadaʒ/ actually does seem to be intransitive since, unlike {daʒ}, it requires the use of a postposed particle {?ad} (see Chapter 5) to establish a connection with its object.

4.2.3.2.2.2 Position Class 2

The second position class contains the prefixes which

comprise the third position class of the first prefix set.

/la ɬa giŋgyaɬidʌn/ "I made him carve."

{lʌ} "third person (neutral)," {ɬa} "first person singular," {giŋ}- + {gya}- intransitive + {ɬid} "carve" -{gʌn} "past tense"

4.2.4 The Predicate Base

The simplest type of predicate base is formed when the (prefix) and (suffix) options in the rule given in 4.2 are ignored and $R \rightarrow$ Predicate root. This produces roots to which inflectional suffixes can be attached directly; many examples are contained in the preceding sections. A somewhat more complex situation arises when $R \rightarrow$ Non-predicate root. If this is the form of the rule, the (suffix) option is no longer optional, but must be taken. Apart from the classificatory elements which enter into prefix-suffix constructions, the suffix chosen must be -{ga} "middle" (see 4.2.3.1.1.1.1) or -{da} "causative."

It is not possible to state with certainty at this point how much recursiveness must be built into the rules of Skidegate predicate formation. If -{ju} and the other suffixes in this position class are treated simply as

derivational suffixes, an example such as /ʔu yuʔʌngilga/ "it's gotten big" contains a derivational suffix within the unit which would, theoretically, receive derivational inflection. Within my corpus there are no clear examples of structures such as $[\text{Root} + \text{derivational suffix(es)}]_{\text{Base}} + \text{derivational suffix(es)}_{\text{Stem}}$, but there are some instances which may turn out to have this configuration, such as /la la tagyaǵʌngwanʌs/ "He ate it as he stood around." The stem can be analyzed in more than one way; however, if $\{-\check{g}\Lambda\eta\}$ is a derivational suffix and is represented in the suffix discussed under 4.2.3.1.1.2.8, then it is possible that the structure of this stem must be given as $[_{\text{stem}} [\text{ta}]_{\text{base}} [\text{gya} + \check{g}\Lambda\eta]_{\text{base}} + \text{gwan}]_{\text{stem}}$, where $\{-\text{gwan}\}$ is a poorly understood suffix which seems to mean "around, about." Its position in the predicate complex is uncertain. The breakdown just presented implies a type of stem in which several bases, some containing derivational suffixes, form a stem which itself takes derivational suffixes. The problem is then to determine how much recursiveness or endocentricity should be incorporated in the rules which generate the stem.

Another open question concerns the relative order of bases within a stem. Swanton believed that the order of these bases is determined by syntactic function: "It would seem that... each complex expresses modality or instrumentality

in relation to the following ones." (Swanton 1911, p. 218.) But this formulation is inadequate, since there are many examples which contradict it: /lʌ kʌʃuʒayayʉʌŋa/ "he sings really well," where {ʒaya} "rich, fat" reflects upon {kʌʃu} "sing" which precedes it, and yuʉʌŋ "very much" modifies preceding {ʒaya}. This common pattern of stem, in which the first base indicates an action or state and the following ones introduce qualifications, is exactly opposed to Swanton's dictum, which makes too much dependent on the paraphrase or gloss provided. Similar efforts to associate affixal order with syntax-- such as Swadesh's general treatment of the so-called "governing suffixes" in Nootka (Swadesh 1933)--leave themselves open to the same criticism. In general, it would seem that such syntactically based attempts to account for affixal order have been somewhat premature.

Another possibility is that the order of bases is a function of the lexicon in most cases. A broad variety of Northwestern languages appear to support the claim that what were originally thought to be ~~grammatically derivative types of morphological forms~~ lexical suffixes, for example--must be regarded as equally basic. In transformational terms, stems composed of compounded bases would not represent surface grammatical reductions of underlying periphrastic constructions, but

unpredictable lexical entries. A third possibility is that both syntactically predictable and lexically idiosyncratic stem forms exist.

4.3 Dependent Predicate Structure

4.3.1 Embedding constructions

There are two principal types of embedding construction: that in which the dependent predicate occurs as the object of another verb, such as {ʔumsʔAd} "know," suda "tell" and that in which the predicate is used in a construction which modifies or qualifies an independent predicate structure. This modification is often marked by the presence of an adverbial particle; in other cases the nature of the modification must be inferred from the meaning of the dependent predicate. These two types of construction are designated below as object clauses and adverbial clauses, respectively.

4.3.1.1 Object Clauses

Dependent predicate structure is marked in constructions which are the translation objects of {ǵan} ... {ʔumsʔAd} "know," suda "tell" and gudla "like" by replacing the inflectional suffixes of the sixth position class with a suffix {-s}.

/da gyaǵids ǵan di ʔumsʔida/ "I know you carve."

{da}"second person singular (active)," {gya}- "intran-

sitive" + {ǰid} "carve" - {s}, {ǰan} "for,"

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {ʔunsʔad}

"know" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

The old information anaphora suffix {-i} can appear following {-s}.

ʔǰǰ qinsi ǰan lǰ ʔunsʔida/ "He knows I see it, saw it."

{ǰǰ} "first person singular (active)," {qin} "see" -{s}

-{i}, {ǰan} "for," {lǰ} "third person (neutral)," {ʔunsʔad}

"know" -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

The use of the second-hand information suffix in such predicates to identify past tense has been discussed in the section above devoted to {-i}.

When the predicate is the object of {su} "say" or gudǰ "think," it must contain the suffix {-gǰ} in place of the markers of the sixth position class. It is possible that this {-gǰ} should be identified with the {-gǰ} of position class 6, but there is no evidence to support this identification. In /lǰ sǰǰǰǰxidayan/ "He started to cry, they say," there is no old information evident to which which reference could be made. (On the other hand, both suffixes are subject to the same phonological processes, and a case might be made on this basis for identifying them, but this seems insufficient proof.)

It seems to me quite likely that the distinction between $\{-s\}$ and $\{-g\Lambda\eta\}$ reflects a distinction in factivity between the predicates which require them respectively. The predicates which require $\{-s\}$ appear to be factive; that is, they presuppose the truth of the information contained in the embedded clause. Those requiring $\{-g\Lambda\eta\}$ in the embedded predicate do not. While the factivity of suda is not evident from the English gloss, there is some evidence from morphology that it is relatively forceful, since it appears to be composed of $\{su\}$ "say" followed by the causative suffix $\{-da\}$.

4.3.1.2 Adverbial Clauses

Adverbial clauses are formed with a suffix $\{-s\}$ replacing the suffixes of inflectional position class 6--a different suffix $\{-s\}$, be it noted, from that discussed in the preceding section. The constant meaning of this suffix is that the predicate so marked is of subordinate status to some other element in the sentence. When adverbial particles follow the subordinate predicate, the subordinated information translates as a modification of the information given in the independent clause.

/ʔA ġads gyan di kinagʌŋa/ "When I run it makes me warm."
 $\{ʔa\}$ "first person singular (active)," $\{ġad\}$ "run" $\{-s\}$,

{gyan} "when," {di} "first person singular (neutral),"
 {kin} "warm" + {-ga} "middle" - {gAn} "habitual/periodic" -
 {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

When the (pro-) nominal object of an independent predicate is an element in a clause whose predicate displays dependent structure, the latter appears to modify the nominal element and usually produces glosses containing relative clauses:

/su ḡaḡudyas ʒA qingAn/ "I saw the lake that was lying there."
 {su} "lake," {ḡa}- shape element + {ḡudi} "stationary position on a surface" - {s}, {ʒa} "first person singular (active),"
 {qin} "see" - {gAn} "past tense"

There is a sense, not apparent in the translation, in which a clause containing a dependent predicate is *subordinate* to a following clause containing an independent predicate, where the translation gives the impression of a *co-ordinate* relationship:

/gud ḡa talAn ʔisdasi talAn kučidAnga/ "We put it together and bundle it up."
 {gud} "together," {ḡa} "in, at," {talAn} "first person plural (active)," {ʔisda} predicate of action - {s} - {i} old information anaphora, {talAn}, {ku}- shape element + {čid} meaning unclear - {gAn} "habitual/periodic" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

In narrative discourse one of the most common types of construction is a long series of clauses containing dependent predicates, concluding with an independent clause. This is usually the manner in which a series of actions is presented.

The preceding example illustrates the fact that the old information anaphora suffix can appear following *-{s}*.

There is a certain type of construction in which, it would appear, the presence of *-{i}* is obligatory. In sentences such as

/ḡayasi gyu ʔalʌŋ halʔagʌŋga/ "We get the fat ones."

{ḡaya} "fat" *-{s}* *-{i}*, {gi} "to," {hʌw} foreground,

{ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {halʔa} "gather" -

{gaŋ} "habitual/periodic" *-{ga}* neutral tense/modal suffix

-{i} must be present in order to provide an implicit subject for the embedded clause which can serve as the object of the predicate {gi}....{halʔa}.

4.3.2 Nominalized Predicates

The suffix *-{gay}*, discussed in Chapter 3, is used to create a second type of dependent predicate structure which may be referred to as "nominalized." The nominalized predicate may appear alone or with a pronoun or nominal form functioning as subject, object or both.

/šawgay di giŋšaxagilga/ "Fishing tires me."

{šaw} "fish" -{gay}, {di} "first person singular (neutral),"
 {giŋ}- "causative" + {šaxa} "weak" + {giž} "become" -{ga}
 neutral tense/modal suffix

/žA kašway di gudlaga/ "I like to sing."

{žA} "first person singular (active)," {kaš} "sing" -
 {gay}, {di} "first person singular (neutral)," {gud} "mental
 activity" + {žA} "good" -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

In view of the fact that the pronoun here associated with the nominalized predicate is the *active* form, not the neutral form one would expect if a possessive relationship were being expressed ("my singing"), it is reasonable to suggest that in this construction the whole clause has been nominalized. Nominalized predicates can also appear with aspectual inflection.

4.4 Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns are formally particles. However, it is advantageous to consider them in the present discussion of predicate morphology, since there two sets of pronouns in Skidegate and the choice of set in any particular case is determined, via the predicate, on the basis of the active or non-active (neuter) role of the participant in question. Grammatically neutral contexts fall broadly into three principal types: mental or physical states, objects

of predicates, and "oblique" relations (including possession; see Chapter 3) contained in phraseses such as the Skidegate equivalents of "to me," "from him," etc. (Note, in the following examples, that the foreground marker {hAw} reduces to a single vocalic segment postclitically bound to the constituent it underscores.)

/hAwmi di xwigAn/ "I was cold there."

{hAwmi} "there," {hAw} foreground, {di} "first person singular (active)," {xwi} "cold" -{gAn} "past tense"

/da gyaqids ġan di ʔumsʔida/ "I know you carve."

(See 4.3.1.1 for analysis.)

/di la squdagAn/ "He hit me."

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {la} "third person (active)," {squda} "hit" -{gAn} "past tense"

/law di sda ʔisdagAmni/ "He took it from me."

{la} "third person (active)," {di} "first person singular (active)," {sda} "from," {ʔisda} "predicate of action" -{gAn} "past tense" - {i} old information anaphora

The neutral pronouns are {di} "first person singular,"

{dAn} "second person singular," {lA} "third person,"

{ʔiA} "first person plural," {dalAn} "second person plural."

In neither pronominal set is plurality distinguished in the third person pronoun itself.

Active pronouns are {ɬa} "first person singular," {da} "second person singular," {la} "third person," {taɬaŋ} "first person singular," {daɬaŋ} "second person plural."

The only phonological complications which the pronouns present arise in the phonemic shapes of the third person pronouns. It would seem that the neutral form {lA} always has the surface shape {la} except when it occurs immediately preceding the predicate of the clause to which it belongs. Thus it often overlaps the active form {la}. {la} itself, however, occasionally appears with the phonemic form /lA/ due to suprasegmental phenomena, poorly understood at present, which cause the underlying a of the particle to reduce to A at some level. Thus, while grammatical minimal pairs exist with the form

/tanay la qingAn/ "He saw the bear."

/tanay lA qingAn/ "The bear saw him."

(illustrating the rule that pronouns always appear to the right of (pro-) nominal forms in clauses unless the former are foregrounded) there are also sentences like

/la lA qingAn/ "He saw him"

in which the relation between the phonemic and underlying shapes of the pronouns is inverted: /la/ here derives from {lA}, the neutral pronoun, while /lA/ is the

phonemic shape of {la}, the active pronoun.

Sapir made some suggestions about possible historical morphological analysis of the pronouns. In his 1923 study he broke {taɫaŋ} and {daɫaŋ} into two morphemes each, with the second element identical to the {-ɫaŋ} plural suffix discussed in Chapter 3, and {ʔiʔa} into two morphemes with the second identical to the particle {ʔa} also discussed in Chapter 3. In the case of {daɫaŋ} the remainder, da, can obviously be identified with the singular second person particle {da}, but it is not clear what meaning can be assigned to ta- or ʔi-. As far as I am aware these partials do not recur in Skidegate with meanings compatible with Sapir's analysis, and hence I do not regard these interpretations as tenable, even diachronically. In the following chapter I comment briefly on the syntactic functioning of the pronominal particles.

Chapter 5 Particles

5.1 Introduction

The Skidegate dialect contains a large number of particles. These may be divided into a number of classes on the basis of their syntactic behavior, although it is not possible at this stage of research to make such a division equally rigorous for all classes. I have isolated seven classes of particles:

(1) Pro-nominals: these particles have parallel distribution, in surface grammar, to nominal stems.

(2) Postpositions: these particles form noun phrases when used in construction with a preceding noun or pro-nominal. Grammatical evidence that N + postposition form a constituent is provided by two criteria: the behavior of this type of construction with respect to clause emphasis and the permutation possibilities of the construction with respect to the predicate of the clause. Postpositional phrases are endocentric in one respect: N + postposition + postposition + ... exist, so that the distribution of N + postposition overlaps in this respect that of N. Hence the dividing line between pro-nominals and postpositional phrases, while generally clear, becomes less definite in this one regard.

(3) Postpositional Phrase Pro-forms: these particles have distribution identical to N + postposition, including

the endocentric possibility referred to in (2).

(4) Prepositions: these particles form noun phrases when used in construction with a following noun. Grammatical evidence that preposition + N is a constituent is provided by the same criteria invoked for postpositional phrases.

(5) Modals: the surface distribution of these particles is not at all well understood at present. These particles define sentence modes, i.e. interrogative, and do not appear to enter into constituency with any other elements of the sentence.

(6) Adverbials: these particles enter into constituency with preceding clauses, generally subordinate, whose relation to the following clause is specified by the adverbial. Grammatical evidence that Clause + Adv forms a constituent is provided by the same criteria as that for postpositional and prepositional phrases.

(7) Emphatic particles: these particles emphasize preceding constituents, though the two forms which belong to this class are not syntactically parallel and are grouped together for convenience primarily.

5.2 Pro-Nominals

There are two sub-classes of Pro-nominals: those with interrogative function and those which do not have interrogative function.

5.2.1 Interrogative Pro-Nominals

As stated in Chapter 4, interrogative Pro-nominal particles function as old information in determining predicate inflection; that is they require $\{-g\Lambda\eta\}$ as the representative of position class 6, both for past and non-past contexts. It should also be noted that a suffix $\{-u\}$ can be isolated for these forms which does not seem to occur elsewhere and is probably best regarded as a fossilized element, possibly a frozen form of the foreground marker $\{h\Lambda w\}$, predictably reduced.

5.2.1.1 $\{gasin\}$

$\{gasin\}$ generally translates "how" or "what" and appears to function both interrogatively and non-interrogatively, as illustrated in the following examples respectively.

$/gasin\eta\ \check{g}\ a\ da\ \lambda a\check{g}\ \Lambda g\ \Lambda\eta/$ "How are you fixing it?"

$\{gasin\}$ - $\{u\}$, $\{\check{g}\}$ "in, at," $\{da\}$ "second person singular (active)," $\{\lambda\Lambda\}$ -"by hand" + $\{\check{g}\ u\ \check{g}\}$ "fix" - $\{g\Lambda\eta\}$ neutral old information anaphora

$/gasin\ gwa\ \check{g}\ id/$ "What's it like?"

$\{gasin\}$, $\{gwa\}$ "interrogative," $\{\check{g}\ id\}$ "predicate of condition"...

The above form is an interrogative, but is constructed on the pattern of yes/no questions: the particle $\{gwa\}$ is used and the predicate receives no tense/modal inflection. $\{gasin\}$ appears to function strictly as a pro-form.

5.2.1.2 {gisdu}

{gisdu} indicates "who...?" in interrogative constructions.

/gisdu gyaḡa ḡagay ?ijin/ "Who owns that dog?"

{gisdu}, {gya}- possessive particle -{ḡa} "attributive,"
 {ḡa} "dog" -{gay} nominal old information, {?ij} existence
 predicate - {gΛη} neutral old information anaphora

5.2.1.3 {gismud}

{gismud} indicates "when...?" in interrogative contexts.

/gismuddu 1Λ sdiḡḡasan/ "When is he coming back?"

{gismud} - {u}, {1a} "third person (active)," {sdiḡ}
 "return" -{ḡas} "future" - {gΛη} neutral old information
 anaphora

5.2.1.4 {gin}

{gin} indicates "where...?" in interrogative contexts.

/ginu dΛn stigΛn/ "Where are you sick?"

{gin} - {u}, {dΛn} "second person singular (neutral),"
 {sti} "sick" - {gΛη} neutral old information anaphora

The sentence /gin gyu da qaydan/ "Where are you going?,"
 in which the postposition {gi} is followed by the suffix
 -{u}, illustrates the possibility of the pronominals appearing
 in place of N in postpositional phrases.

5.2.1.5 {gus}

{gus} indicates "what...?" in interrogative contexts.

/gusu da taḡasan/ "What are you going to eat?"

{gus} - {u}, {da} "second person singular (active),"

{ta} "eat" - {ḡas} "future" - {gʌŋ} neutral old information

The sentence /gus gyu da sdaḡan/ is parallel to /gin gyu da qaydan/ given in the preceding section, and means "what do you want?"

5.2.1.6 {gislu}

{gislu} indicates "how much, how many?" in both interrogative and non-interrogative contexts.

/gislu ʔan ʔiḡin/ "How many are here?"

{gislu}, {ʔan} "here," {ʔiḡ} existence predicate - {gʌŋ}

neutral old information anaphora

In /gʌm gislu la gi tada ḡids ḡan di ʔumsʔadḡʌŋga/ "I don't know how many (the) years are to him," i.e. "I don't know how old he is," {gislu} functions non-interrogatively.

5.2.1.7 {gikus}

{gikus}, like {gus}, indicates "what...?"; the difference in meaning between the two forms, if any exists, is not apparent.

{gikus} seems to have a variant form gukus; the alternation gu ~ gi, or hints of such an alternation at an earlier period, may be inferred from the form of a number of the interrogative pronominals.

/gikusu ʔiḡin/ "What is that?"

{gikus} - {u}, {ʔij} existence predicate - {gʌŋ}

neutral old information anaphora

5.2.1.8 {ginis}

{ginis} indicates "which one... ?" in interrogative contexts.

/ginisu dʌŋ ʒunʒa ʔijin/ "Which one is your father?"

{ginis} -{u}, {dʌŋ} "second person singular (neutral),"

{ʒʌŋ} "father" - {ʒa} "attributive," {ʔij} existence predicate

- {gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora

A certain amount of internal reconstruction is possible for the forms given in 5.2.1.1-5.2.1.8, based on obvious phonological/semantic similarities.

5.2.2 Non-interrogative Pro-Nominals

5.2.2.1 {gina}

{gina} denotes some unspecified non-human referent.

/gina gyu ʒʌ qinga/ "They're looking for something."

{gina}, {gi} "to, towards," {hʌw} foreground, {ʒʌ}

"they," {qin} "see" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

5.2.2.2 {ʌgu}

{ʌgu} indicates something like "the way, manner, fashion."

/hʌwsi ʌgu la ʒʌŋʌmni di gudlaga/ "I like the way he cooked that."

5.3 Postpositions

Postpositions have in almost every case a spatial meaning, except in certain in certain idiomatic constructions in which they obligatorily accompany members of a special set of predicates. All postpositional phrases can be permuted to the right of the predicate of the clause to which they belong. The syntactic status of postpositional phrases is considered briefly in 5.10.

5.3.1 {ʔun}

{ʔun} is phonologically and doubtless etymologically identical to the instrumental prefix {ʔun}- illustrated in 4.2.3.2.1.2.6. This particle always appears compounded with the postposition {gu}, forming a construction which means "on top of."

/iḡagay ʔungu sqaʔΛxu sqaʔΛnga/ "The cup is on top of a rock."

{iḡa} "rock" - {gay} nominal old information, {ʔun}, {gu}, {sqa}- shape element + {Λxu} meaning unknown, {sqa}- shape element + {ʔΛ} "position above" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

5.3.2 {xid}

{xid} contributes a basic meaning "below" to the constructions in which it appears, but in some instances this is translated "in front," e.g. /lAnagay xidgu/

"in front of the village." Such translations are to be explained by extralinguistic circumstances; in this case, Haida villages were situated on rises immediately behind a beach, with the house fronts facing the water. {xid} always appears compounded with another postposition.

/nagay xidgu la ?ijin/ "I'm under the house."

{na} "house" - {gay} nominal old information, {xid}, {gu}, {la} "first person singular (active)," {?ij} existence predicate - {gaŋ} neutral old information anaphora

{xid} also appears in the constructions xidgi "under" and xidgi "down."

5.3.3 {xŋ}

{xŋ}, which like {?un} is limited in its role as postposition to compound constructions with {gu}, means "in front of" or, perhaps, "facing," and is probably related to xŋa "face."

/nagay xŋgu la ?ijin/ "It's in front of the house."

{na} "house" - {gay} nominal old information, {xŋ}, {gu}, {la} "third person (active)," {?ij} predicate of existence - {gaŋ} neutral old information anaphora

5.3.4 {gu}

{gu} has a rather complex distribution which cannot

be easily tied to an obvious meaning. It appears to be an unmarked form, indicating location in the most general way, and consequently sometimes overlaps the translation sense of other postpositions. It usually translates "on" when used in a postpositional phrase. When it appears without a preceding co-constituent, it seems to function as a non-specific location indicator and is translated "there."

/gwayay gu ʔu ʔa ʔijimmi/ "I was out on the islands."

{gway} "island" - {gay} nominal old information, {gu}, {hʌw} foreground, {ʔa} "first person singular (active)," {ʔij} existence predicate - {gʌn} "past tense" - {i} old information anaphora

/dʌn sgway gu gina ʔiji/ "There's something on your back."

{dʌn} "second person singular (neutral)," {sgway} "back," {gu}, {gina} "something," {ʔij} existence predicate - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

/gu ʔalʌŋ ʒaɰdagʌŋin/ "We used to stay overnight there."

{gu}, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ʒaɰ} "night" + {da} "causative" - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {gʌn} "past tense"

{gu} actively participates in the formation of postpositional phrases containing more than one postposition:

/xu yuʒu gu ʒaw ʔalʌŋ ʔijinga/ "We used to go up on

boats," /gus gu sdaw dalʌl dalʌŋ qwandayan/ "Where did

you get all that money?" Furthermore, {gu} may appear more than once within a single clause to carry out different functions: in /λu yuju gu ǰa gu ʔalʌn λuqa^ʔʌʃagʌn/ "We got there on a big boat" {gu} appears in the postpositional phrase λu yuju gu ǰa and also functions as a non-specific location indicator following {ǰa}.

The concatenation of {gu} with the postposition {gi} is particularly interesting. The sequence of these two particles produces a phonemic string /gwi/, resulting automatically from deletion of the g of {gi} followed by reduction of u to w prevocally, as required by Rule 7 in Chapter 2. {gi} itself refers to direction; the combination of location and direction postpositions has the effect of determining that there must be or have been movement in space to reach the location referred to. Thus, in the sentence /ŋalay gwiyu hʌwsi cigʌngʌn/ "That's what spawns on the kelp," a more literal rendering of the postpositional phrase would give "That's what spawn onto the kelp." The same element of meaning is involved when gi is compounded with preceding postpositional compounds containing {gu} as the final member. In /nagay ʃidgwiyu ʔu lʌ katagʌnni/ "He threw it under the house," the speaker emphasized that the thrower could not have been under the house him/herself at the time of throwing. In effect, /ʃidgwiyu/ ({ʃid} + {gu} + {gi} followed by the foreground

marker {h\w}) means something comparable to "underto."

5.3.5 {ǵa}

The essential meaning of {ǵa}, as opposed to {gu}, appears to refer to location defined in terms of space which is somehow bounded. {ǵa} is often translated by "in" or "amongst."

/nagay ǵa la xyalǵanni/ "He danced in the house."

{na} "house" - {gay} nominal old information, {ǵa},

{la} "third person (active)," {xyaǵ} "dance" - {ǵan}

"past tense" - {i} old information anaphora

/čisǵalanʔway ǵa ǵǵannu ǵa čisǵasǵagǵanni/ "I put it in the same pot."

čisǵalanʔu "pot" - {gay} nominal old information, {ǵa}, {ǵǵan}

emphatic, {h\w} foreground, {ǵa} "first person singular

(active)," {čis}- shape element + {ǵasǵa} "put" (?) - {ǵan}

"past tense" - {i} old information anaphora

In certain constructions, the presence of spatial boundaries implied by the use of {ǵa} is concealed. Thus in /kaw ǵa la ʔisis di gi la sudagan/ "She told me she was going to the herring spawn" it must be borne in mind that herring spawn is deposited on beds of seaweed which are regarded as markedly distinct from the water around them. In order to harvest the eggs (which is the reason for "going to" them) it is necessary to penetrate them in a small boat. In the construction /xyal ǵa/ "to the dance" it appears that what is referred to is en-

trance into the dance area, and so on.

{gu}, by contrast, appears to always specify a plane--below, above or neither, depending on whether it is compounded with {xid}, with {ʔun} or either with {xʌŋ} or without any preceding element. The key feature of {gu}, vis-à-vis {ǵa}, is the absence of boundaries. It might seem unlikely, therefore, that a postpositional phrase could exist containing both {gu} and {ǵa}, since such a phrase would then indicate both boundaries and the absence of boundaries. In the construction ʌu gu ga, "on the boat," however, it may be that a boat is regarded simultaneously as a location and as an enclosure, so that both particles may be present. Other constructions, e.g. ʌu gu ǵi as in /ʌu gu ǵiyu la kʌtagʌnni/ "He threw it on the boat," make clear by the use of {ǵi} (see 5.3.8) that a boat is regarded as a penetrable *volume*.

5.3.6 {gi}

{gi} indicates movement or orientation towards something or to something.

/la gi ʔʌ ʔisdagʌŋ/ "I gave it to him."

{lʌ} "third person (neutral)," {gi}, {ʔʌ} "first person singular (active)," {ʔisda} predicate of action - {gʌŋ} "past tense"

5.3.7 {sda}

{sda} indicates movement or orientation away from some-

thing.

/la sda ʔa ʔisdagaŋ/ "I took it from him."

(See preceding section for analysis.)

In the sentence /huyad ʔu gaŋ gaŋaŋ ʒidʒaŋgaŋ kiway ʔa
 ʔa ʒulʒagaŋmi sda ʔa/ "Now there's none like that after...
 they fixed the road," {sda} seems to subordinate the clause
kyu-gay ʔa ʔa-ʒulʒa-gaŋ-i "They fixed the road." {sda}
 thus functions here as an adverbial (see 5.7.), though it
 is unclear whether the subordination implies causality or
 only temporal order.

5.3.8 {ʒi}

{ʒi} indicates movement through some sort of boundary
 or enclosed space.

/nagay ʒi ʔu la qasʒwanŋaŋ/ "He walked through the house."
 {na} "house" -{gay} nominal old information, {ʒi}, {haŋ}
 foreground, {la} "third person (active)," {qa} "move" +
sʒwanŋaŋ probably related to sgwanŋaŋ "one" -{gaŋ} neutral
 old information anaphora

5.3.9 {ʒulʒa}

{ʒulʒa} indicates proximity. It is conceivable that this
 form is actually a compound of an element {ʒul} with the post-
 position {ʒa}.

/nagay ʒulʒa ʔu la xwigŋmi/ "It was cold near the house."

{na} "house" - {gay} nominal old information, {qũḡga},
 {hAw} foreground, {xwi} "cold" - {gAn} "past tense -
 {i} old information anaphora

5.3.10 {ḡAn}

{ḡAn} indicates purpose or benefit.

/gud ḡAn ṭalAn ?isdaŋ/ "We do it for each other."

{gud} reciprocal, {ḡAn}, {ṭalAn} "first person plural
 (active)," {?isda} predicate of action -{gAn} neutral
 old information anaphora

5.3.11 {ṭAlgi}

It seems likely that this particle is, at least
 etymologically, a compound of {ṭAḡ} and {gi}, where
ṭAḡ is the shape of the suffix discussed in 4.2.3.1.1.2.4
 indicating "motion downward." The connection between the
 postposition and the suffix is evident in forms such as
 /ḡAnlay ṭAlgyu ḡḡa lā kaṭagAn/ "He threw a rock over the
 stream."

{ḡAnλA} "water" - {gay} nominal old information, {ṭAlgi},
 {hAw} foreground, {ḡḡa} "rock," {lā} "third person (active),"
 {kaṭa} "throw" - {gAn} "past tense"

It appears that the use of this form has been extended
 to comparisons, perhaps on the basis of the meaning
 "over," as in /ṭaxun ṭAlgyu di xwiga/ "I'm colder than
 my friend."

5.3.12 {ʔad}

{ʔad} generally translates "with," and is the principal means of conjoining nominal forms.

/di ʔad gwa dʌŋ ʔisguda/ "Do you want to come with me?"

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {ʔad}, {gwa} interrogative, {dʌŋ} "second person singular (neutral)," {ʔij} existence predicate + guda "want," related to {gud} "mental activity"

5.3.13 {dʌŋʔad}

{dʌŋʔad} appears to be used very much in the same way as {ʔad}; it is possible that it represents a "full form" of which {ʔad} is a contraction.

/wa dʌŋʔad la qaxulgan/ "He went out with it."

{ʔu} "it," {dʌŋʔad}, la "third person (active)," {qa} "move" + {-xul} "out of..." {-gan} "past tense"

5.3.14 {tʌwǵan}

This postposition may be a compound of a form {tʌw} with {ǵan}, although the former element does not recur in my data in other grammatical environments. The form {tʌwǵan} translates "besides."

/kiway tʌwǵannu nagay ʔijin/ "The house is beside the road."

{kyul} "road" - {gay} nominal old information, {tʌwǵan},

{hΛw} foreground, {na} "house" - {gay} nominal old information,
 {?iǰ} existence predicate - {gΛŋ} neutral old information
 anaphora

5.3.15 {ǰa}

This form is problematic; it may in fact be suffixal. Swanton identifies it a distributive, but this gloss may not be adequate.

/ǰkin ǰa giyu ɬΛ qaydΛŋ/ "I went up into the woods."
 {ǰkin} "woods," {ǰa}, {gi} "to, towards," {hΛw} foreground,
 {ɬa} "first person singular (active)," {qayd} "leave, go" -
 {gΛŋ} "past tense"

5.4 Postpositional Phrase Pro-forms

The class of particles I describe as postpositional phrase pro-forms shares the following distributional possibilities with postpositional phrases: (1) its members cannot appear as subject or object of any predicate; (2) they may be permuted to the right of the predicate of the clause to which they belong; (3) they may form postpositional phrases by entering into construction with postpositions; (4) they do not appear to form constituents with modifying elements. It is not possible to say whether or not current syntactic theory would require a description of these forms as surface lexical representatives of underlying

postpositional phrases; it is probably the case that not enough is known about Haida syntax to permit such an analysis. I use the term "pro-form" in describing this class without any implication that "pro-forms" are in some sense derived from some kind of full form; my purpose is merely to characterize the class in terms of its distribution, which seems rather specific as outlined in (1)-(4). It should be noted that when these pro-forms are concatenated with postpositions or postpositional phrases, as referred to in (2), they form a constituent which is a postpositional phrase. See 5.10 for a discussion of the criteria for establishing constituency in Skidegate.

Pro-forms appear to have primarily temporal or spatial reference. For this reason Swanton characterized them as "adverbs," a term covering several particles which do not conform to (1)-(4) in addition. I have assigned some of these other particles to the class of modals. Swanton also identifies the pro-forms with postpositions in their syntactic function (Swanton 1911, p.265.) This is clearly inappropriate, since the particles in question never form constituents with preceding nominal forms. This fact is in itself a strong argument for identifying the class syntactically with constructions already containing a nominal form.

5.4.1 {qad}

{qad} indicates a distant location over water.

/qad gi talan ?isis gyannu gina ġa xannu talan qadaganga/
 "When we go across we barter it for anything."

{qad}, {gi} "to, towards," {tal^han} "first person plural (active), {?iĵ} existence predicate -(s) subordinate structure (adverbial), {gyan} "when," {hAw} foreground, {gina} "anything," {ġa} "at, in," {xAn} emphatic, {hAw} foreground, {tal^han} "first person plural (active)," qada "barter" (perhaps {qa} "go" followed by the causative suffix: "make go") -{gAn} "habitual/periodic" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

There is an obvious relationship between {qad} and a particle qada which appears in forms such as /qadaw ?iĵi/ "It's out in front," /qada ġayway gu ŋu ɬa xAw?ingAn/ "I went out to fish in the ocean," /qada gwayay qurġaw gi talan halxaga/ "Out by those islands is where we get it."

The last two examples illustrate a major difference between {qad} and qada: the latter appears to function prepositionally, although it is by no means evident that /qada gayway gu/ is a single constituent. However, the phrase /qada gwayay/ "the islands out there" definitely raises this possibility.

5.4.2 {sih}

{sih} seems to identify a height or a high location.

/sih gi gayuway ?iʃiŋga/ "The waves go way up."
 {sih}, {gi} "to, toward," {ǵayu} "ocean" - {gay}
 nominal old information, {?iʃ} existence predicate
 - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {ga} neutral tense/
 modal suffix

5.4.3 {kyah}

{kyah} refers to the outside. There is some reason to believe that the underlying form of this particle is kiǵa or kiǵ; it appears with the latter shape in one item of data from Becky Pearson, who also possessed the alternation /tyah/ ~ /tiǵ/. The relative infrequency of final h suggests that both {sih} and {kyah} may derive from underlying Ci ǵa constructions, where ǵa is the particle discussed in 5.3.14, parallel to ʔkin ǵa "in the woods" and other spatial descriptions.

/kyah di xwigʌŋ/ "I was cold outside"

{kyah}, {di} "first person singular (neutral)," {xwi}
 "cold" - {gʌŋ} "past tense"

{kyah} appears to function idiomatically in a fashion parallel to the English translation "outside," as, for example, in the construction kyah gu sda "outside of me," that is, "besides me."

5.4.4 {gud}

{gud} indicates that the action specified in the predicate is reciprocal among the participants. It is not completely clear whether this particle should be identified as a postpositional phrase pro-form or a pro-nominal on the basis of the present corpus.

/gud ʔalʌŋ qɪŋa/ "We see each other."

{gud}, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active),"

{qɪŋ} "see" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

5.4.5 {hiʔaǵʌŋ}

{hiʔaǵʌŋ} is best translated "a little while ago."

It is possible that the form is actually a compound containing the postposition {ǵʌŋ}.

/hiʔaǵʌŋmu laʔ qɪŋa/ "I just saw him."

{hiʔaǵʌŋ}, {hʌw} foreground, {lʌ} "third person

(neutral)," {la} "first person singular (active),"

{qɪŋ} "see" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

5.4.6 {ʌsda}

{ʌsda} translates "long ago." It is very possible that this form represents a compound containing {sda}, which as noted in 5.3.7 is occasionally used with some temporal significance. If so, then etymologically at least {ʌsda} is not a pro-form but a full postpositional phrase.

/ʎʌsda gʌm iǰǎŋgulǰa ʔan ʔisǰʌŋgʌŋgin/

"Years ago there was no work here."

{ʎʌsda}, {hʌw} foreground, {gʌm} negative,

{iǰǎŋgulǰa} "work," {ʔan} "here," {ʔij} exist-

ence predicate - {ǰʌŋ} negative suffix - {gʌŋ}

"habitual/periodic" - {gʌn} "past tense"

5.4.7 {huyad}

{huyad} signifies "today, right now."

/ʔaŋa, huyaddu di dagwiya/ "Yes, I'm well today."

{ʔaŋa} "yes," {huyad}, {hʌw} foreground, {di} "first

person singular (neutral)," dagwiya "well" (certainly

based on dagwi "strong," but precisely how, and what

the reason for the iy sequence rather than a syllabicity

shift to uy, as illustrated in Chapter 2, may be, cannot

be stated at present) - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

5.5. Prepositions

The prepositions constitute a small class of particles which have deictic significance. They form constituents with following nominal forms, but preposition and nominal do not appear to be as closely bound together in such constructions as do nominals and postpositions. The prepositions serve as the basis for certain locational and demonstrative elements, although the processes involved

in their formation are probably not accurately described in synchronic terms as suffixation.

5.5.1 {ʔa}

{ʔa} identifies nominal or pronominal forms as proximate.

/ʔa ǰudayu gyagʌn ʔiǰi/ "This box is mine."

{ʔa}, {ǰuda} "box" - {gay} nominal old information, {gya} possessive -{gʌn} speaker/possessor coreference, {ʔiǰ} existence predicate ---{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

{ʔa} also emphasizes proximity in the spatial relations marked by various particles, as in /ʔa ǰadaw ʔiǰi/

"It's out in front here."

It is likely that {ʔa} is the basis for ʔan "here."

ʔan has a distribution parallel to the postpositional phrase pro forms. {ʔa} also serves as the basis for pro-nominal forms: ʔasi "this," as in /ʔasiyu ʔiǰi/ "It's this," and ʔanis "this one," as in /ʔanisu ʔiǰi/ "It's this one."

There is almost certainly identity between the n in ʔan and that in the interrogative pro-nominal {gin}, historically speaking.

5.5.2 {hʌw}

{hʌw} identifies nominal or pronominal forms as

being at a middle distance.

/hAW ġudayu ʒA q̇idANI/ "I carved that box."

{hAW}, {ġuda} "box" - {gay} nominal old information,

{hAW} foreground, {ʒa} "first person singular (active),"

{q̇id} "carve" - {gAN} "past tense" - {i} old information

anaphora

{hAW} also appears to be the basis for the forms

hAWN "there," as in /hAWN gyu lA čigagAN/ "He moved

there," hAWSI "that," as in /hAWSI ?ad ʒa gyadačġAN/

"I sold that," and hAWNIS "that one," as in /hAWNISU

di gudlaga/ "I sold that one." These are all parallel

to those adduced for {?a} in the preceding section.

Furthermore, {hAW} appears to function as some sort of

dummy support for the emphatic {čAN} in the idiomatic

construction hAW xAN: /hAW čANmu cina gi la hAłčaga/

"He's still fishing."

In addition, there is a problematic form /hAWSgay/

which appears to contain a particle {gay}, an anaphoric

form best translated as "that stuff," which almost

certainly represents the source of the -{gay} nominal

old information suffix. Since no independent form

*hAWS exists, it is possible that the s in /hAWSgay/ is

epenthetic; there is evidence, in the interrogative

pro-nominals, of an earlier rule of s-epenthesis in Skidegate.

It may also be that this *s* is linked with the *s* in the apparent pronominalizing suffix *-{si}*, referred to above.

5.5.3 {wa}

{wa} identifies objects at the furthest position from the speaker; it is, however, less commonly used than {ʔa} or {hʌw}. {wa} cannot appear with the endings *-{si}* or *-{nis}*, although it does appear to form constructions with spatial postpositions, which is not true of {ʔa} or {hʌw}.

/wa ǰudayu gyagʌn ʔiǰi/ "That box over there is mine."

(See 5.5.1 for analysis.)

In /wa ǰiyu ʔa ʔisdagʌmi/ "I put it there," {wa} seems to form a constituent with the postposition {ǰi}, but such examples should be regarded cautiously. There may be several particles which can appear with the phonemic shape /wa/. wan, corresponding exactly to ʔan and hʌwn, indicates a location at a maximum distance from the speaker. Unlike these forms, however, it appears to function in at least one instance as a predicate root: /ʔʌ wanǰasga/ "I'll go up on the beach." The form wadsgwa appears to mean something similar to the meaning of wan; Swanton identifies a form "adjxwa" (/ʔaǰxwa/ in my transcription

system) as "over here," but this form does not occur in my corpus. The gwa partial in wadsgwa is most likely identical to the form Swanton gives as gua "towards" as in ikiagua "towards the door of the house." Such a segmentation reinforces the likelihood of an earlier rule of s-epenthesis, alluded to in several places above.

5.6 Adverbials

Adverbial particles have much in common with postpositions, both in terms of their rightward position in constructions and in terms of the permutation possibilities of the constructions to which they belong. As noted in connection with {sda}, there is an occasional overlap between the postpositions and the adverbials. Unlike postpositions, however, adverbials form no endocentric constructions. In an adverbial phrase there can be but one adverbial particle. In addition, adverbial phrases generally contain full clauses, rather than nouns, as leftmost elements. In most cases these are dependent clauses, but not always. It is difficult, at this stage of knowledge, to make extremely broad generalizations about the distribution of the adverbials. For example, one encounters the form /gyannu gasin da sugʌŋ/ "and what did you say?" where the appearance of {gyan} to the left of the rest of the question is definitely unusual. The limits

on the syntactic freedom of this class of particles requires considerable further investigation.

5.6.1 {λu}

{λu} is various translated "if" and "when;" it may thus be glossed as a reference to an event which has not occurred up to the present, without any distinction between potentiality and actual achievement.

/la gi ʒA kyagAηay λu la qa^ʒΛχagAη/ "He came when I called him."

{lA} "third person (neutral)," {gi} "to, towards," {ʒa} "first person singular (active)," {kyagAη} "call" - {gay} nominal old information, {λu}, {la} "third person (active)," {qa} "move" + -{Λχa} - {gAη} "past tense"

The form /kyah gi la ʒA qaxulga sabli ʒA λAğulğA λu ʒa/ "If I make bread I'll tell him to get out" illustrates the permutation of the adverbial phrase sabli ʒa λAğulğA λu to the right of the predicate of the independent clause. It also exemplifies an infrequent form of signalling dependent clause structure, viz., supplying no inflectional suffix to mark structure type. {λu} is often used to conjoin clauses, as in /čanudanay ġaʒal ʒasin ʒa λAjuğAğdayey λu ʒungu sabligay ʒa ġalAηgAηmi/ "I turned the lid of the stove upside down and cooked on it." This sentence is in accord with the tendency in Skidegate to conjoin clauses by subordinating one of them, a charac-

teristic feature of Haida discourse.

5.6.2 {gyan}

{gyan} seems to overlap the meaning of {lu} almost completely. It translates variously as "if, when, and."

/ʔa ǰads gyan di kɪnagʌŋga/ "When I run it makes me warm."
 {ʔa} "first person singular (active)," {ǰad} "run" - {s} dependent structure (adverbial), {gyan}, {di} "first person singular (neutral)," kina "warm" (analyzable into {kin} "warm" + some suffix which may be the "middle" suffix {-ga}, or possibly a suffix with the shape {-a}) - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

Other examples of {gyan} are /dʌmʔʌn di ǰid gyanu dʌn ʔa qyaŋǰasga/ "If I'm well I'll come see you" and /gi ʔa dayʌŋʌnni gyan ʔa qɪnstagʌnni/ "I

was looking for it and I found it." In textual material {gyan} is used as a clause conjunct by my main informant far more often than {lu}. It is not possible to characterize the difference in function between these two adverbial with any precision, however, at this stage of research.

5.6.3 {ǰagʌn}

{ǰagʌn} translates "because." Concatenated with {gina}, it forms a construction gina ǰagʌn "why (something

happened)" as illustrated in forms such as
 /gina ġagʌn lʌ sus ġʌn di ʔunsʔida/ "I know
 why he said it." Concatenated with the interrogative
 particle {gus} and the interrogative suffix {-u},
 it forms a construction gus ġagʌnu "why...?" as
 in /gus ġagʌnu lʌ ʔisʌʌʒayan/ "Why did he come?"
 For the most part, however, {ġagʌn} appears in construc-
 tion with dependent clauses.

/lʌ ʔuds ġagʌnu ʔan gi la ʔiʒin/ "He came here because
 he's hungry."

{lʌ} "third person (neutral)," {ʔud} "hungry" - {s}
 dependent structure (adverbial), {ġagʌn}, {hʌw}
 foreground, ʔan "here," {gi} "to, towards," {la}
 "third person (active)," {ʔiʒ} existence predicate
 - {gʌn} "past tense"

5.6.4 {kunġasda}

{kunġasda} translates "before;" it may contain {sda}.

/lʌ ʔisʌʌʒayey kunġasdaw gʌm ʌʌgwi ʔalʌn ʔisʌʌnʌy gʌwġʌnʌ/

"We can't leave before he comes."

{la} "third-person (active)," {ʔiʒ} existence predicate +
 -{ʌʌʒa} "to a destination" -{gay} nominal old information,
 {kunġasda}, {hʌw} foreground, {gʌm} "not," {ʌʌgu} "way,"
 {gi} "to," {ʔiʒ}+{-ʌʌn} "can," -{gay}, {gʌw} "lost" -{ġʌn}
 "negative" -{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

5.6.5 {qʌwdi}

{qʌwdi} translates "after" or in some other fashion indicating precedence.

/ʔan ʌ ʔis qʌwdiyu ʌ qaydʌn/ "He was here for a while and then he left."

ʔan "here," {ʌ} "third person (active)," {ʔiʃ} existence predicate, {qʌwdi}, {hʌw} foreground, {ʌ} "third person (active)," {qayd} "leave" - {gʌn} "past tense"

5.6.6 {di}

{di} conveys a meaning comparable to that expressed by "during." In the following example this sense of sustained duration is reflected in the use of the durative aspect marker *-{di}*. It seems likely that there is an historical connection between the suffix and the particle; synchronically, however, they co-occur and are clearly different grammatical forms.

/na ǰʌŋga ʌ ʔisdya dyu ʌ ʔʌ qingʌŋgin/ "When he was home I used to see him."

{na} "house," {ǰʌŋga} meaning unknown, {ʌ} "third person (active)," {ʔiʃ} existence predicate - {di} durative aspect, {di}, {hʌw} foreground, {ʌ} "third person (neutral)," {ʔʌ} "first person singular (active)," {qiŋ} "see" - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {gʌn} "past tense"

The appearance of *-{di}* suffixed to {ʔiʃ} is very unusual.

5.6.7 {s'kyan}

{s'kyan} translates "in spite of, but."

/ʔan da ʔisis s'kyan x'Annu gam dan talan qing'anga/

"Even if you're here we don't see you."

ʔan "here," {da} "second person singular (active),"

{ʔiʃ} existence predicate - {s} dependent structure

(adverbial), {s'kyan}, {x'An} emphatic, {hAw} foreground,

{gam} negative particle, {dan} "second person singular

(neutral)," {talan} "first person plural (active),"

{qin} "see" -- {g'An} negative - {ga} neutral tense/modal

suffix

5.6.8 {kyawğa}

{kyawğa} means something like "until." It seems to function as much postpositionally as adverbially.

/di kyawğa la ğida/ "He's waiting for me."

{di} "first person singular (neutral)," {kyawğa},

{la} "third person (active)," {ğid} "wait for, lack" -

{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

/ʔan x'Annu la ʔis'axey kyawğa talan ğidğasga/ "We'll wait
until he gets here."

5.7 Modal Particles

Modal particles mark the discourse function of clauses. Their outstanding distributional feature is that they do not appear to form constituents with any other element in the clause. Coupled with this the modal particles

display considerable positional freedom, so that it is not possible to state the constraints on their appearance in clauses, although certain tendencies are evident.

5.7.1 {gAm}

{gAm} serves both as the negative syntactic particle and as the response form for "no."

/gAm gu.ʎa ʔisǰʌŋǰasga/ "I will not be there."

(See 4.2.2.3 for analysis.)

In certain constructions the use of {gAm} requires additional grammatical material vis-à-vis the non-negative: /gAm ʎʌgu naŋ ǰi ʎaw hakwan waǰʌŋga/ "No one can do it." Here {naŋ}, which would be sufficient to express "someone" in "Someone can do it," must be supplemented by the construction ǰi ʎaw, where it is possible that ʎa is identical to the {ʎʌ} discussed in Chapter 3. The meaning of this construction is unclear and very probably idiomatic. A parallel example is /gAm gina ʎa gu ʔisǰʌŋʌnni/ "There was nothing there."

5.7.2 {ʔa}

{ʔa} marks a constituent which is used outside the context of any independent clause to which the constituent would normally belong; an isolated phrase, in other words.

In most cases it is evident that the constituent has been permuted to the right of its predicate:

/čisǵalaŋʔway ǵa ǰAnnu ǵa čisǵasǵAnmi taŋagiǵyuʔanay ǵan ʔa/ "I put it in the same pot so it would get

really salty," where taŋagiǵyuʔan - ǵay ǵAn would ordinarily be the left-most constituent in the

sentence. Particles also undergo this sort of permutation: /ǵkin ǰa giyu ǵalAn hAlǰa huyad ʔa/

"He's hunting in the woods now," in which {huyad} has been moved to the right of {hAlǰa} "hunt, gather" -

{ǵAn}. Even nouns undergo this type of movement, at least in the speech of some Skidegate people:

/kaw la qixagAn/ "He found some herring spawn."

/la qixagAn kaw ʔa/ "He found some herring spawn."

Dependent clauses followed by {ʔa} can appear in isolation:

/gi la gudAnsi ǵagAn ʔa/ "Because he wants it." (in answer to a question.)

5.7.3 {ǵa}

{ǵa} is the imperative particle.

/ǵa ǵa taŋǵada/ "Salt some!"

{ǵa} "some," {ǵa}, {taŋ} "salt" + {-ǵa} "change of state" + {-da} causative

Ordinarily the use of {ǵa} requires only that the predicate have

the form of a bare stem or stem plus the {-ǧu} plural suffix. In other cases, however, the picture is more complex. Consider the form /skuǰi ʒa dey ʒʌn qinʌn/ "Look after the bones," where {dey} seems to mean "carefully." {qin} "see" is followed by a suffix with the phonetic form {-ʌn}, appearing in Becky Pearson's speech only when she was presenting textual material, in particular traditional narratives. This form is interesting because of its resemblance to the suffix {-čʌn} (conceivably to be assigned to inflectional position class 6) which appears in such forms as /hala ʒalʌn ga tačʌn/ "Let' eat." In other cases {ʒa} reduces to a single vocalic segment which attaches post-clitically to various elements of the clause:

/dey ʒʌnna ʌʌskunʒa/ "Be careful while you're cleaning."

5.7.4 {gwa}

{gwa} is the interrogative particle, used to form yes/no-response questions.

/dʌn gwa ǰud/ "Are you hungry?"

{dʌn} "second person singular (neutral)," {gwa},

{ǰud} "hungry"

5.8 Emphatic Particles.

The cover term "emphatic" is an oversimplification of the function performed by the two particles to which I have applied the term. They are not syntactically parallel.

Both form constituents with grammatical material to their left, yet it would be inaccurate to include them with either postpositions or adverbials, since their co-members in many of these constructions never appear with either adverbials or postpositions.

5.8.1 {hAW}

{hAW}, to which I refer throughout this analysis as the foreground marker, applies to constituents with which it is construction and signals the focus of interest within the clause. The position of {hAW} thus distinguishes /hAWSiyu ʔA ʃaydigAN/ "That's what I was knitting" from /ʔaw hAWSi ʃaydigAN/ "I'm the one who was knitting that," where {hAW} has been reduced to [u] in the first example and to [w] in the second. The effect of this foregrounding is frequently lost in the translation.

{hAW} rarely appears as [hAW] in the surface phonology. It becomes progressively reduced to [hu], [ʔu] and finally to a single segment which is either [w], following /a/, or [u], following all other segments. When {hAW} is reduced to [u] and attaches to a preceding stop, the stop becomes geminate.

The foreground marker plays a very significant syntactic role, which will be discussed below in 5.10.

5.8.2 {ǰΛn}

{ǰΛn} serves to intensify or underscore certain implicit--often extralinguistic--features of the situation described in the sentence. For example, it translates "even" in /gΛm qaxulnay ǰΛn gu ʔisgΛngΛnni/ "There wasn't even a bathroom there." In this context {ǰΛn} is used to mark the fact that a bathroom is something that one expects to find, that its absence calls for comment. Similarly, {ǰΛn} translates "right" in /wa gu ǰannu ʔalΛn ʔaǰgasΛdagΛngin/ "We used to dry them right there." Here the use of {ǰΛn} stresses the fact that herring spawn were not moved at all to be dried. In /nagay ǰa ǰannu la ʔiji/ "He's still in the house" attention is called to the fact that someone has persisted in staying in a certain place. {ǰΛn} puts special stress on the context in which an action is committed or a situation set, apparently in the face of some expectation that the action or situation might well be different from what it is.

{ǰΛn} takes part in the formation of many constructions which appear somewhat idiomatic. Thus /walu ǰan/ "all, everyone, everything" is not easily analyzable. In a form like /hΛw ǰΛn/ "still," the use of the preposition {hΛw} is difficult to motivate. In /gaŋaŋ ǰΛn/ "as soon

as" the use of {ǎʌŋ} reinforces the simultaneity conveyed by the use of {gaŋaŋ} "like, the same as," but depending on the context the phrase will be translated in other ways, or will not correspond to a separate element in the translation.

5.9 Unclassified Particles

There are a number of particles in Skidegate which cannot be assigned to any of the classes described above. Some of these forms suggest possible sub-grouping on the basis of syntactic parallelism, but I have refrained from setting up further classes until more data is available.

5.9.1 {ʔada}

{ʔada} translates "different, various."

/ʔadaw ʔalʌŋ ʌǎḡudǎḡagʌmmi/ "We made it different."

{ʔada}, {hʌw} foreground, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person singular (active)," {ʌʌ}- "by hand" + {ḡulḡa} "make" - {gʌŋ} "past tense" - {i} old information anaphora.

{ʔada} combines with the stem-forming "middle" suffix to produce a predicate {ʔadaga} "different."

5.9.2 {ʔaŋa}

{ʔaŋa} is the response form for "yes."

It can be used in isolation or incorporated in a sentence, e.g. /ʔaŋa, gu la ʔisḡwasan/ "Yes, they'll

be there."

5.9.3 ?asǵid

?asǵid usually translates "around here" or something comparable. Historically it is extremely likely that this is a complex form, compounded from {?a}, discussed earlier, and ǵid, a partial which appears elsewhere (see 5.9.4 and 5.9.5) with locative meaning:

/?asǵid la ?isdyu la ʔA qingAngin/ "While he was around here I used to see him." The s in ?asǵid is very likely the residue of an epenthetic process which I have pointed out elsewhere. Swanton noted the presence of these intrusive fricatives, but only for the set I have described as interrogative pro-nominals. He suggested that the s might be comparable to the Tlingit interrogative particle {sa} historically, but since this s occurs in non-interrogative contexts as well as interrogative contexts in Skidegate there is no foundation for Swanton's comparison (Swanton 1911, p. 261.) Nor does it appear possible to associate any constant meaning with this s.

As far as the partial ǵid is concerned, it is possible that this form should be analyzed as the postposition {ǵi} followed by a suffix {-d} segmented by Swanton (1911,

p. 264). The particles which contain ǰid all seem to involve a meaning translatable as "throughout," corresponding to the sense of the postposition {ǰi}.

5.9.4 λǰid

λǰid translates "everywhere, all over." Here too it is probable that ǰid has been compounded with an element λ, perhaps with morphemic status, which is very likely the same form which appears in λǰu "place" and λAdaǰaw "mountain:" /λǰid ǰannu lA xyalagAn/ "He danced everywhere."

5.9.5 ǰǰid

ǰǰid translates "inside," but a more accurate translation would probably be "within." The most probable account of this form is that the "distributive" {ǰa} discussed earlier in this chapter has been compounded with ǰid, as in /na ǰǰid lA qagunga/ "He's walking around inside the house."

5.9.6 {ǰu}

{ǰu} indicates some unspecified non-human referent.

It generally translates "it."

/ǰu kǰasλadyan/ "It's drying."

(See 4.2.3.1.1.1.2; the durative suffix -(di) is used.)

{ʔu} sometimes has the surface shape [ʔwa], as in /wa dʌŋʔad la qaxulŋʌn/ "He went out with it." In certain constructions {ʔu} apparently serves as an anaphoric element marking the place of a constituent which has been permuted to the right of the predicate, as in /ʃkeyda sdaw ʔu qyangagʌŋgin mayngay ʔa/ "You could see the mine right from the bottom," literally "The mine could be seen from the bottom," where {ʔu} takes the place of mayngay before the predicate. It is possible that in one somewhat obscure type of construction, illustrated by the sentence /la ga.ta wa gi kilxigʌŋga/ "He should eat," the form /wa/ represents {ʔu}, so that, taking into account the meaning of {kilxi} "need," the literal meaning is something like "It needs (that) he eat."

5.9.7 {ga}

{ga} indicates some unspecified referent, usually translated as "some." It does not pattern syntactically like the pronouns (see below, 5.10) but rather like a full nominal which is the object of a predicate whose subject is also a full nominal:

/ʔalʌŋ ga qiʃaga/ "We found some."

{ʔalʌŋ} "first person singular (neutral)," {ga},

{qiʃa} "find" - {ǧas} "future" - {ga} neutral tense/modal

suffix

If {ga} were a pronoun, as Swanton describes it, we would expect it to precede {talʌŋ} in the above example.

I do not have data on the behavior of {ga} as a sentence subject, or on its relations with the foreground marker.

5.9.8 {lu}

{lu} identifies the boundaries of a quantity or activity. It often translates "as," "as much," or something paraphrasable as "to the extent of."

/dʌn lu cina ʔʌ qiʃasga/ "I'll get as much fish as you."

{dʌn} "second person singular (neutral)," {lu},

{cina} "fish," {ʔʌ} "first person singular (active),"

{qiʃa} "find" --{ǵas} "future" --{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

5.9.9 {gulu}

{gulu} establishes a relation of identity or resemblance between elements. Historically this form could easily be a contraction of {gud} "reciprocal" with {lu}, discussed in the preceding section.

/gulu ʔu ǵidan/ "They're the same size."

{gulu}, {ʔu} "it," {ǵid} predicate of condition - {gʌŋ}

neutral old information anaphora

5.9.10 {gaŋaŋ}

{gaŋaŋ} establishes a relation of identity or resemblance between elements.

/tawayu huyad quyasi gaŋaŋ ʃanu kaway ʔasiŋ ǵidan/

"The grease is expensive and so is the herring spawn."

{tʌw} "grease" - {gay} nominal old information, {hʌw} foreground, {huyad} "now," {quya} "expensive" - {s} dependent structure (adverb clause), {gaŋaŋ}, {ʃʌn} emphatic, {hʌw} foreground, {kʌw} "herring spawn" - {gay} nominal old information, {ʔasiŋ} "also," {ǵid} predicate of condition - {gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora.

It is quite possible that {gaŋaŋ} should be assigned to the adverbial class, but I do not possess sufficient evidence on this point.

5.9.11 {gya}

{gya} indicates possession; however, it must receive a suffix to indicate its function.

When the speaker and the possessor are identical,

a suffix {-gʌn} is attached: /gyagʌn ʃagayu ʔiji/

"That's my dog," where the first person pronoun never

appears. When the speaker is not the same person as

the possessor, the attributive suffix {-ǵa} is used,

and the possessive particle follows a personal pronoun,

as in /la gyaḡa čikčikgayu ?iʃi/ "It's his wagon."

Swanton regarded {gya} as a suffix, stating that in Masset "it is now sometimes used as the equivalent of ga." (Swanton 1911, p. 269.) It seems more accurate to regard the form gia which Swanton gives for Masset as the correspondent of Skidegate gyaḡa where ḡ in Skidegate corresponds to Masset ϕ /a a; the resulting vowel cluster is reduced to a single a.

5.9.12 ḡaʔadḡa

ḡaʔadḡa poses a problem, since in its very limited appearance in my data it translates "ever," while Swanton supplies the gloss "between," and also refers to a form ḡaʔadḡi with the gloss "between (with motion)." Though Swanton provides no examples, I am prepared to accept these glosses, which point in an obvious way to a compounding of some form {ḡaʔad} with the postpositions {ḡa} and {ḡi}. However, forms such as /gʌm gwa ḡaʔadḡa da ɬaḡʌŋʌŋ/ "Don't you ever sleep?" are left unexplained.

5.9.13 {ḡaŋa}

{ḡaŋa} only appears in construction with {la} "third person (active)," with which it forms a plural.

/la ḡaŋaw kajuga/ "They're the ones that are singing."

{la} "third person (active)," {ǵaŋa}, {hΛw} foreground,
 {kaǰu} "sing" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

As this example illustrates, the use of {ǵaŋa} makes it unnecessary to employ the plural inflectional suffix in the predicate. The use of {ǵaŋa} is not at all well understood at present.

5.9.14 {λan}

{λan} translates "stop."

/λan la ʒa giŋwagΛnni/ "I made him stop doing it."

{λan}, {lΛ} "third person (neutral)," {ʒa} "first person singular (active)," {giŋ}- + {wa} "do" - {gΛn} "past" - {i} old information anaphora

5.9.15 {waλu}

This form only appears in construction with {ǰΛn}, forming a phrase which translates "all, everyone, everything:"
 /waλu ǰΛnnu ʒa qingΛn/ "I saw all of it." It is conceivable that {waλu} represents a compound containing {λu} "extent," discussed above.

5.9.16 {ʔasiŋ}

{ʔasiŋ} translates "also."

/tawayu huyad quyasi gaŋaŋ ǰΛnnu kaway ʔasiŋ ǵidan/

"The grease is expensive and so is the herring spawn."

(See 5.9.10 for analysis.)

5.10 Syntactic Properties of Particles

Any consideration of Skidegate syntax must begin with the basic facts of word order. There are, in effect, three canons for constituent order in clauses containing no foregrounded elements:

(1) X S(subject) O(bject) V(erb), which applies when both S and O are nominals. X designates all other material in the clause, with the exception of modal particles.

(2) X O S V, which applies when both S and O are pronouns. This is the principal syntactic distinction between pronouns and pronominals: only the particles I have described as pronouns conform to this canon.

(3) X (Pro-)Nominal Pronoun V, which is self explanatory. Considerations of clause function are here ignored; what is important is the form-class of the constituent.

These three canons are not applicable when a foregrounded constituent occurs within the clause. Under these conditions the canon is

(4) A hAw B, where A is the foregrounded constituent and B is the rest of the clause. In one sense (1)-(3) do apply even when an element is foregrounded, as long as that element belongs to X; i.e., is not either S or O.

In general, it appears that {hAw} cannot separate members of a grammatical constituent from each other. This may be stated formally in the following manner: {hAw} follows strings of morphemes dominated by nodes immediately below the sentential node. This formulation, which has the status of a hypothesis, has important implications for the constituent structure of Skidegate sentences. It would mean, for example, that the ordinary order of full nominal forms, S O V, could not be parsed as NP PrPhr (see Table of Symbols), where PrPhr is NP V, because {hAw} can in fact follow the sentence object, but cannot follow the verb. In other words, it does not appear that NP V under any circumstances forms a constituent separate from another member of the clause.

The structure of postpositional phrases is of particular interest in this connection. It is clear that postpositions not only occur adjacent to each other, producing strings of as many as three postpositions so far noted, but may form constituents when they occur in these strings. ~~Two independent criteria con-~~stitute evidence that N + postposition (+ postposition (+ postposition)) are a grammatical unit: in the first place, as noted earlier, such strings can be permuted to

the right of the predicate in their clause. Thus, one can say either /la gi ʔaʔisdagʌnni/ or /ʔaʔisdagʌnni la gi ʔa/ for "I gave it to him," where $NP[la\ gi]_{NP}$ is permuted to the right of $V[ʔisdagʌnni]_V$, while the permutation of {la} by itself would not be possible: */gi ʔaʔisdagʌnni la ʔa/. The same would hold for a longer postpositional phrase, such as /nagay ʃidgwi/ "under the house (with motion):" one could not permute $NP[nagay]$, or $NP[nagay\ ʃid]_{NP}$ or $NP[nagay\ ʃidgu]$ to the right of the verb. Such a prohibition calls to mind the well-known A-over-A constraint which restricts application of a grammatical rule specified for a certain constituent description--such as NP--to the highest node within the clause bearing that description, within the limits of the structure index for the rule. If, then, rightward permutation of a constituent is regarded as a transformation--as it would be, in the metalanguage of generative syntax--the behavior of postpositional phrases that one would predict from the A-over-A constraint is exactly what one finds.

The second indication of the grammatical integrity of strings of postpositions is their behavior with respect to foregrounding. As noted earlier, foregrounding

involves the appearance of the foregrounded constituent at the extreme left of the clause. It is tempting to regard foregrounding, in this sense, as leftward permutation, at least for constituents which are subjects or objects. In any case, the same restrictions may be noted in this case as obtained for rightward permutation: only the maximal postpositional phrase can be foregrounded. Continuing the example given above, one could have /nagay ŋidwiyu/ but never */nagayu ŋidwi/ or */nagay ŋiddu ŋwi/-- nor, for that matter, */gyu nagay ŋidgu/. The implication of this, of course, is that foregrounding is to be described as the result of a transformational process, since it respects the A-over-A condition.

It would go far beyond the scope of this thesis to attempt a characterization of Skidegate NPs. As noted in Chapter 1, not enough is known about the language to permit such an attempt, though the data point in certain directions. {ŋAn}, for example, appears to the right of any postpositional elements with which it is in construction. Nothing with which it forms a constituent may be permuted either rightward or (in the sense discussed above) leftward. It would seem, then, that when {ŋAn} forms a constituent with

an element X preceding, the labelling for the brackets on $X \check{\Lambda}n$ is the same as for the brackets on X. The foregoing is largely speculative of course; too little information on the distribution of particles exists, and we still do not know, for example, whether the constraints on dependent clauses followed by adverbial particles are parallel to those on postpositional phrases. Clearly there is ample room for future investigation in these areas of Skidegate grammar.

Chapter 6 Analysis of a Haida Text

6.1 Introduction

The text presented in this chapter was the first of eleven personal narratives collected from Becky Pearson. The text as presented has been divided into fourteen parts. These divisions were made by the speaker and seem to correspond neither to sentential units nor to units one might wish to characterize as paragraphs, though some are grammatically minimal sentences and some are considerably longer. It will be noted that every one of these divisions, regardless of length, concludes with an independent predicate structure.

The text begins with a question, and the remainder of the text develops out of the answer to the question. This fact is important for understanding the use of old information anaphora throughout the narrative. It would appear that the initial question introduces {kaw} "herring spawn" as a discourse element for the first time and makes it classifiable as old information in the rest of the text, although not all old information anaphora refers to {kaw}. Mrs. Pearson was quite conscious of the connection between {-i} and {kaw} in any given clause.

Ethnographically this text is of interest in calling attention to the economic specializations and exchanges which have been maintained between the two villages. The severe contraction of the original Haida-speaking population on the Charlottes thoroughly damaged what must have been an active network of productive interdependence maintained among the twenty-odd local groups in the pre-Contact period. Mrs. Pearson's account attests to both a strictly mercantile exchange of goods between Masset and Skidegate and a more informal type of arrangement between families. I am not aware of any modern ethnographic treatment of economic (or other) relations between the two villages.

6.2 Becky Pearson's Narrative

In the analysis below I present the text as a whole, with the major divisions (henceforth "discourse units") indicated numerically. In the discussion of the various discourse units I present their composition in terms of constituent clause units, but do not attempt any further characterization of discourse structure.

- (1) /ʌʌgu kʌw gi ʔalʌŋ hʌlʔagay ʒʌn ʔunsʔʌdday gi
gwa dʌn sdaʔʌ (2) ʌu gu ʒʌw gi ʔalʌŋ hʌlʔagʌŋga lʌnagay

ʔidgu ʔa ʔada gwayay ʔuʔʔa gi ʔalʔ hʔlʔʔ (3) gaʔasi
 gyu ʔalʔ hʔlʔʔ ʔiʔʔidsi ʔalʔ tʔʔadasi gyan ʔisin
 ʔalʔ ga kaʔada gyan ʔisin ʔalʔ ga qaʔdaga siʔa ʔʔʔ
 ʔa (4) ʔalay gwiyu hʔwsi cigʔnsi gaʔaʔiʔs gyanu gi
 ʔalʔ hʔlʔʔʔʔga ʔal sdiŋ lu gaʔaʔilay ʔidiŋ (5) ʔʔway
 gu ʔi sda ʔalʔ ʔisdasi gaʔʔʔ ʔʔʔʔ ʔalʔ qʔwʔʔʔʔʔ
 gyan ʔisin ʔalʔ ga tʔʔadaga gyan ʔisiŋ pʔʔstik
 baʔz ʔi ʔalʔ ʔisdas ʔalʔ qaʔdaga (6) kaʔaslas
 gyanu gud ʔa ʔalʔ ʔisdasiyu ʔalʔ kuʔidiŋga gulu
 kuʔidey wey kilxigʔʔga ʔad gi ʔalʔ ʔisis gyanu
 gina ʔa ʔʔʔʔ ʔalʔ qadagʔʔga tʔw ʔaw ʔalʔ qadagʔʔga
 tawayu huyad quyasi gaʔʔʔ ʔʔʔʔ kaway ʔasiŋ ʔidiŋ
 (7) sʔyu gi ʔasiŋ ʔalʔ hʔlʔʔʔʔga (8) sʔiway gi
 ʔalʔ hʔlʔʔʔs gyanu fayv pʔʔʔ peyl ʔaw ʔey ʔeʔiyagʔʔga
 (9) gay ʔad hu gud gi ʔʔʔ ʔalʔ gyadaʔʔʔʔga gʔʔ
 sʔyu ʔʔʔ ʔalʔ qixʔʔʔʔʔʔga ʔʔʔʔʔʔda gu ʔa (10) mʔʔʔ
 sdaw sʔyu ʔalʔ ʔisdas gyanu ʔada meynʔʔnd sda ʔasiŋ
 sʔyu ʔalʔ ʔisdagʔʔga (11) sʔyu gi ʔalʔ hʔlʔʔʔs gyanu
 kʔʔʔʔwa ʔʔʔʔ ʔaw gi ʔalʔ hʔlʔʔʔʔʔʔʔ (12) huyaddu
 gʔʔ gaʔʔʔ ʔʔʔ ʔalʔ waʔʔʔga gʔʔʔʔʔʔ xadala ʔis dyu
 kʔʔʔʔwa ʔaw gi ʔalʔ hʔlʔʔʔʔʔʔʔʔʔʔ wa gu ʔʔʔʔʔ ʔalʔ
 kaʔasʔʔʔʔʔʔʔʔ (13) gyan kaʔasi hu ʔʔʔ gi ʔalʔ ʔisdasi
 gyanu ʔalʔ ʔigʔʔʔʔʔʔ gyanu ʔʔʔʔʔʔʔ ʔi ʔalʔ ga ʔisdas

hu ʔada ʔalʌŋ ʌʌgʌlʒaga (14) gay ʔad ʔasin
 ʔalʌŋ gyadaʔwan

(1) Do you want to know how we pick fish eggs?

(2) We go out on the boats and we get them by

those islands (3) We pick the thick ones and then we

salt some and we dry some and we also freeze some

for the wintertime (4) They spawn on the kelp when

it gets thick on the kelp we pick it and it takes

a couple of days to get thick on the kelp (5) When

we take it off the boat we spread some of it out

on the beach and we also put it in plastic bags and

we freeze it (6) When it gets dry we put them together

and bundle them up and the bundles have to be uniform

size and we barter it for grease the grease is ex-

pensive and so is the fish eggs (7) We harvest sea-

weed too (8) When we pick the seaweed it's five dol-

lars for a five-pound pail (9) We sell it to one

another; we don't get the seaweed here in Skidegate

(10) We get the seaweed from Masset and then we also

get some from the mainland too (11) When we went

to get seaweed we had to go to Cumshewa Inlet there's

where we used to have to get it (12) They don't do

that any more when we had small gasboats we used to

go to Cumshewa and get it and dry it right there

(13) When it's dry we bring it over here and we dry

it and we put some in the stove and we fix it dif-

...

ferent (14) We used to sell that too.

6.3 Analysis of the Text

In the following discussion I employ the terms "sentential unit" and "clause unit." By the first term I mean the minimal constituent of a discourse unit which can stand as an independent isolated utterance which, if subtracted from the discourse unit, would leave no dependent structure as a remainder. By the second term I mean any constituent which contains a single predicate.

6.3.1 First Discourse Unit

The first discourse unit consists of a single sentential unit containing three clause units.

6.3.1.1 C₁ (First Clause Unit)

/ʎʌgu kʌw gi tʌlʌŋ hʌlʃʌgʌy/ "the way of our getting herring spawn"

{ʎʌgu} "way," {kʌw} "herring spawn," {gi} "to,"
{tʌlʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {hʌlʃʌ} "gather" - {gʌy} nominal old information

6.3.1.2 C₂

/ʃʌŋ ʔʌnsʔʌddʌy/ "(the)know(ing of)"

{ʃʌŋ} "for," {ʔʌnsʔʌd} "know" - {gʌy} nominal old information

6.3.1.3 C₃

/gi gwa dʌn sdaʃʌ/ "Do you want to know (it)?"

{gi} "to," {gwa} interrogative, {dʌn} "second person singular (neutral)," {sdaʃʌ} "want"

The predicate {sdaʃʌ} applies to the nominalized form of {ʔunsʔad}, which in turn applies to a nominalized form of the clause kaw gi ʔalʌŋ halʃaga as it modifies {ʌgu}. The first discourse unit may then be represented more or less as

$$C_1 [C_2 [C_3 [\text{the way we get } \{kaw\}]_{C_3} \text{ the knowing of}]_{C_2} \text{ do you want?}]_{C_1}$$

6.3.2 Second Discourse Unit

The second discourse unit consists of two sentential units, each of which contains a single clause unit.

6.3.2.1 S₁

/ʌu gu ʃaw gi ʔalʌŋ halʃaŋ ʌnaŋay ʃidgu ʔa/

"We go out to get it on boats in front of the village."

{ʌu} "boat," {gu} "there," {ʃa} "at, in," {hʌw}

foreground, {gi} "to," {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural

(active)," {halʃa} "gather, collect"-{gʌŋ} neutral

old information anaphora, {ʌna} "village," {ʃid}

"below," {gu} "there," {ʔa} modal particle

6.3.2.2 S₂

/qada gwayay qurğa gi talan halxan/

"We get it around those islands out there."

{qada} "out, distant," {gway} "island" - {gay} nominal old information, qurğa "around," {gi} "to," {talan} "first person plural (active)," {halxan} "collect, gather" - {gan} neutral old information anaphora

In both S_1 and S_2 the translation object of {gi}...{halxan} is implicit; it is the {kaw} alluded to in the first discourse unit, which, as old information, permits the use of -{gan} in the second sentential unit.

6.3.3 Third Discourse Unit

The third discourse unit consists of two sentential units, the first containing two clause units and the second containing three clause units.

6.3.3.1 S_1

/ganasi gyu talan halxan/ "We get the thick ones."

6.3.3.1.1 C_1

/ganasi/ "(It's) thick..."

{ganasi} "thick" - {s} dependent structure - {i} old information anaphora

6.3.3.1.2 C₂

/gyu ʔalʌŋ hʌlʒʌŋ/ "We get (it)."

{gi} "to," {hʌw} foreground, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {hʌlʒʌ} "gather, collect" -

{gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora

The most likely analysis of S₁ is that the implicit subject of C₁, referred to by -{i}, is the unstated object of {gi}...{hʌlʒʌ} in C₂. The structure of reference in S₁ may be represented as

C₁ [(It(which is))thick]_{C₁} C₂ [we pick]_{C₂}

6.3.3.2 S₂

/ʔiʒʒidsi ʔalʌŋ taŋʒadasi gyan ʔisiŋ ʔalʌŋ ga ʔaʒada

gyan ʔisiŋ ʔalʌŋ ga ʔaʒda siŋa ʒʌŋ ʔa/ "And then we salt some and we dry some and we also freeze some for winter."

6.3.3.2.1 C₁

/ʔiʒʒidsi ʔalʌŋ taŋʒadasi/ "We salt some."

ʔiʒʒid "some" (probably analyzable) -{si} pronominalizer,

{ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {tʌŋ}

"salt" + -{ʒa} "change of state" + -{da} "causative"

-{s} dependent structure -{i} old information anaphora

The function of the construction gyan ʔasiŋ in linking

these and other clauses is somewhat obscure and will

be discussed more fully below.

6.3.3.2.2 C₂

/tʰalʌŋ ga kʰaḡada/ "We dry some... "

{tʰalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ga}

"some," {ka} "dry" + - {ḡa} "change of state" +

- {da} "causative"

6.3.3.2.3 C₃

/tʰalʌŋ ga qaɪdaga siŋa ḡʌŋ ?a/ "We freeze some for the
winter."

{tʰalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ga}

"some," {qaɪ} "freeze" + -{da} "causative" - {ga}

neutral tense/modal suffix, {sʌŋ} "hard, day" -

{a} meaning unknown, {ḡʌŋ} "for," {?a} modal

particle

6.3.4 Fourth Discourse Unit

The fourth discourse unit consists of two sentential units. The first sentential unit contains three clause units and the second contains two clause units.

6.3.4.1 S₁

/ŋalay gwiyu hʌwsi cigʌnsi gaŋaḡiɪs gyanu gi tʰalʌŋ

hʌlʰagʌŋga/ "They spawn on the kelp when it gets

thick on the kelp we pick it."

6.3.4.1.1 C₁

/ŋalay gwiyu hawsɪ cigansi/ "They spawn on the kelp..."

{ŋal} "kelp" - {gay} nominal old information,
 {gu} "there," {gi} "to," {haw} foreground, {haw}
 "proximate" - {si} pronominalizer, {cigan} "excrete"
 -{s} dependent structure - {i} old information ana-
 phora

6.3.4.1.2 C₂

/ganaǵiɪs gyan/ "When it gets thick... "

{gana} "thick" + {ǵiɪ} "become" - {s} dependent
 structure, {gyan} "when"

6.3.4.1.3 C₃

/gi ʔalɒ hɒɫɫagɒŋa/ "We pick it."

{gi} "to," {ʔalɒ} "first person plural (active),"
 {hɒɫɫa} "collect, gather" - {gɒŋ} "habitual/periodic" -
 {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

6.3.4.2 S₂

/ǵal sdiŋ lu ganaǵilay ǵidaŋ/ "It takes a couple of
 days to get thick on the kelp."

6.3.4.2.1 C₁

/ganaǵilay/ "(the)getting thick"

{gana} "thick" + {ǵiɪ} "become" - {gay} nominal
 old information

This clause unit is a nominalization of gaŋa + ǰiɿ and functions as the subject of the second clause unit.

6.3.4.2.2 C₂

/ǰal sdiŋ lu... ǰidaŋ/ "(It) takes two days."

{ǰal} "night," {sdiŋ} "two," {lu} "extent,"

{ǰid} "wait for, lack" - {gAŋ} neutral old information anaphora

6.3.5 Fifth Discourse Unit

The fifth discourse unit consists of three sentential units, the first and third containing two clause units and the second containing a single clause unit.

6.3.5.1 S₁

/λaway gu ǰi sda ʔisdaŋ gaŋaŋ ʃAnnu ʔalAŋ

qawsλaǰwan/ "We take it off the boat and we spread it around."

6.3.5.1.1 C₁

/λaway gu ǰi sda ʔisdaŋ gaŋaŋ ʃAn/ "Right when we take it off the boat."

{lu} "boat" - {gay} nominal old information, {gu} "there,"

{ǰi} "through," {sda} "from," {ʔisda} action predicate -

{s} dependent structure - {i} old information anaphora,

{gaŋaŋ} "like," {ʃAn} "emphatic"

6.3.5.1.2 C₂

/tʰalʌŋ qʌwsʌŋwʌŋ/ "We spread it around."

{tʰalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {qʌw}

meaning unknown +-{sʌ} "arrange" - {ǧu} "plural" -

{gʌŋ} neutral old information anaphora

6.3.5.2 S₂

/tʰalʌŋ ga tʌŋǧadaga/ "We salt some of it."

{tʰalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ga} "some,"

{tʌŋ} + -{ǧa} "change of state" + -{da} "causative" -

{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

6.3.5.3 S₃

/plʌstʰɪk bʌgz ǧi tʰalʌŋ ʔisdas tʰalʌŋ qʌɖdaga/

"We put it in plastic bags and we freeze it."

6.3.5.3.1 C₁

/plʌstʰɪk bʌgz ǧi tʰalʌŋ ʔisdas/ "We put it in plastic bags."

/plʌstʰɪk bʌgz/ "plastic bags," {ǧi} "through," {tʰalʌŋ}

"first person plural (active)," {ʔisda} action

predicate - {s} dependent structure

6.3.5.3.2 C₂

/tʰalʌŋ qʌɖdaga/ "We freeze (it)."

{tʰalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {qʌɖ}

"freeze" + $\{-da\}$ "causative" - $\{ga\}$ neutral tense/modal suffix

It may be noted here that Mrs. Pearson rejected both the substitution of $\{-ga\}$ for $\{-s\}$ in S_3 , C_1 and the introduction of gyan ?asin between C_1 and C_2 of S_3 .

It appears to be the case that such treatment would have the effect of breaking up a descriptive sequence of two actions conceived as interconnected. Such considerations of the relative interconnectedness of events--which belong to extralinguistic culture--are very likely responsible for the division of discourse such as this text into sentential units and further into dependent or independent clauses.

6.3.6 Sixth Discourse Unit

The sixth discourse unit consists of five sentential units. The first contains three clause units, the second, third and fifth contain two clauses each, and the fourth contains a single clause unit.

6.3.6.1 S_1

/kaḡaslas¹i gyam¹u gud ḡa¹ tal¹ḡ¹ ?isdasiyu¹ tal¹ḡ

kučid¹ḡḡa/ "When it gets dry, we put them together and bundle them up."

6.3.6.1.1 C_1

/kaḡaslası gyanu/ "When it gets dry... "

{ka} "dry" + {-ḡa} "change of state" + {-sλA}

"permeation" - {s} dependent structure -{i}

old information anaphora

6.3.6.1.2 C₂

/gud ḡa talAŋ ʔisdasiyu/ "We put them together..."

{gud} "reciprocity," {ḡa} "at, in," {talAŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ʔisda} action predicate

- {s} dependent structure - {i} old information

anaphora, {hAʷ} foreground

6.3.6.1.3 C₃

/talAŋ kučidAŋga/ "We bundle them up."

{talAŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ku}-

shape element + {-čid} root of unknown meaning -

{gAŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {ga} neutral tense/modal

suffix

6.3.6.2 S₂

/gulu kučidey wey kilxigAŋga/ "The bundles have to

be the same size."

6.3.6.2.1 C₁

/gulu... wey kilxigAŋga/ "(They) have to be the same

size."

gulu probably to be analyzed as {gud} "reciprocal,"
 {lu} "extent," but this analysis is not certain;{?u}
 "it, they," {gi} "to," {kilxi} "need" - {gAn} "hab-
 itual/periodic" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

6.3.6.2.2 C₂

/kučidey/ "the bundles"

{ku}- + {čid} root of unknown meaning - {gay}

nominal old information

6.3.6.3 S₃

/qad gi talAn ?isis gyamu gina ġa xAnmu talAn qadagAnġa/

"When we go across we barter it for anything."

6.3.6.3.1 C₁

/qad gi talAn ?isis gyamu/ "When we go across... "

{qad} "across," {gi} "to," {talAn} "first person plural

(active)," {?iġ} existence predicate - {s} dependent

structure, {gyan} "when," {hAw} foreground

6.3.6.3.2 C₂

/gina ġa xAnmu talAn qadagAnġa/ "We barter it for anything."

{gina} "anything," {ġa} "at, in," {xAn} emphatic, {hAw}

foreground, {talAn} "first person plural (active),"

{qa} "go" + {-da} "causative" -{gAn} "habitual/periodic"

-{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

6.3.6.4 S₄

/tʌw ǰaw ʔalʌŋ qadagʌŋa/ "We barter it for grease"

{tʌw} "grease," {ǰa} "at, in," {hʌw} foreground,
 {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {qa} "go" +
 -{da} "causative" - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" -
 {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

6.3.6.5 S₅

/tawayu huyad quyasi ǰaŋaŋ ʃʌŋmu kaway ʔasiŋ ǰidaŋ/
 "The grease is expensive and so is the fish eggs."

6.3.6.5.1 C₁

/tawayu huyad quyasi ǰaŋaŋ ʃʌŋmu/ "Just like the grease is
 expensive..."

{tʌw} "grease" - {ǰa} nominal old information, {hʌw}
 foreground, {huyad} "today, now," {quya} "precious" -
 {s} dependent structure - {i} old information ana-
 phora, {ǰaŋaŋ} "resemble," {ʃʌŋ} emphatic, {hʌw}
 foreground (Strictly speaking, it is necessary to
 assign this particle to the following clause C₂, since
 only one foreground marker per clause is permitted.)

6.3.6.5.2 C₂

/kaway ʔasiŋ ǰidaŋ/ "So is the fish eggs."

{kaw} "herring spawn" - {ǰa} nominal old information,
 {ʔasiŋ} "also," {ǰid} predicate of condition - {gʌŋ}
 neutral old information anaphora

6.3.7 Seventh Discourse Unit

The seventh discourse unit consists of a single one-clause sentential unit.

/sǵyu gi ʔasiŋ ʔalaŋ hałxagaŋga/ "We harvest seaweed too."
 {sǵyu} *Porphyra perforata*, {gi} "to," {ʔasiŋ} "also,"
 {ʔalaŋ} "first person plural (active)," {hałxa} "collect,
 gather" - {gaŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {ga} neutral tense/
 modal suffix

6.3.8 Eighth Discourse Unit

The eight discourse unit consists of a single sentential unit containing two clause units.

/sǵiway gi ʔalaŋ hałxas gyanu fayv p wnd peyl ǵaw
 ǵey ʔełiyagaŋga/ "When we pick the seaweed it's five
 dollars for a five pound pail."

6.3.8.1 C₁

/sǵiway gi ʔalaŋ hałxas gyanu/ "When we pick the seaweed"
 {sǵyu} *Porphyra perforata* - {gay} nominal old informa-
 tion, {gi} "to," {ʔalaŋ} "first person plural (active),"
 {hałxa} "collect, gather" - {s} dependent structure,
 {gyan} "when," {hAw} foreground

6.3.8.2 C₂

/fayv p wnd peyl ǵaw ǵey ʔełiyagaŋga/ "It's five dollars
 for a five pound pail"

fayv pawnd peyl "five pound pail," {ǵa} "at, in,"
 {hΛw} foreground, {λeɪΛ} "five" +{-ga} middle
 - {gΛŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {ga} neutral tense/modal
 suffix

In this clause the phonemic form /λeɪiya/ results from the fact that g ~ y in the suffix {-ga}; under these circumstances Λ → i. The appearance of the foreground marker both at the end of C₁ and in the middle of C₂ is unexpected and difficult to explain, since following {gyan} in C₁ it represents the whole of C₁ as the foregrounded element in C₂, and therefore should not appear after another element in C₂. It is possible that a speech error is involved.

6.3.9 Ninth Discourse Unit

The ninth discourse unit consists of two sentential units, each containing a single clause unit.

6.3.9.1 S₁

/gay ʔaddu gud gi ǰΛŋ t̃alΛŋ gyadaǰugΛŋga/

"We even sell it to one another."

{gay} "that (stuff)," {ʔad} "with," {gΛd} "reciprocal,"
 {gi} "to," {ǰΛŋ} "emphatic," {t̃alΛŋ} "first person
 plural (active)," {gya}- "intransitive" + {daǰ(u)} "ex-
 change" - {gΛŋ} "habitual/periodic" -{-ga} neutral

tense/modal suffix

6.3.9.2 S₂

/gʌm sǣyʉ ʔan ʔalʌŋ qixǎǎŋʌŋga ʔǎǎgilda gu ʔa/

"We don't get the seaweed here in Skidegate."

{gʌm} negative, {sǣyʉ} *Porphyra perforata*, {ʔan}

"here," {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active),"

{qixǎ} "find" (historically perhaps associated with

{qin} "see" and the distributive particle {ǎ}) -

{ǎŋ} "negative" - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" -

{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix, ʔǎǎgilda

"Skidegate" (which contains the nominal {ʔǎ})

"rock"), {gu} "there," {ʔa} modal particle

6.3.10 Tenth Discourse Unit

The tenth discourse unit consists of a single sentential unit containing two clause units.

/mʌsʌd sɔw sǣyʉ ʔalʌŋ ʔisdas gyanu ʔada meynland

sda ʔasiŋ sǣyʉ ʔalʌŋ ʔisdagʌŋga/ "When we get the

seaweed from Masset we also get some from the

mainland too."

6.3.10.1 C₁

/mʌsʌd sɔw sǣyʉ ʔalʌŋ ʔisdas gyanmu/ "When we get

the seaweed from Masset..."

mʌsʌd "Masset," {sda} "from," {hʌw} foreground,

{sǵyu} Porphyra perforata, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ʔisda} action predicate - {s} dependent structure, {gyan} "when," {hʌw} foreground

6.3.10.2 C₂

/ʔada meylʌnd sda ʔasiŋ sǵyu ʔalʌŋ ʔisdaŋga/

"We also get some from the mainland."

ʔada "distance" (probably {ʔad} "across, over (the ocean)" + some suffix {-ga} or {-a} of undetermined meaning), meylʌnd "mainland," {sda} "from,"

{ʔasiŋ} "also," {sǵyu} Porphyra perforata,

{ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ʔisda}

action predicate - {gaŋ} habitual/periodic -

{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

6.3.11 Eleventh Discourse Unit

The eleventh discourse unit consists of a single sentential unit containing two clause units.

/sǵyu gi ʔalʌŋ halʌs gyanu kamšəwa ʔInlet ǵaw gi

ʔalʌŋ halʌsŋga/ "When we went to get seaweed we

had to go to Cumshewa Inlet."

6.3.11.1 C₁

/sǵyu gi ʔalʌŋ halʌs gyanu/ "When we went for seaweed..."

{sǵyu} Porphyra perforata, {gi} "to," {ʔalʌŋ} "first

person plural (active)," {halʌs} "collect, gather" - {s}

dependent structure, {gyan}"when," {hAw} foreground

6.3.11.2 C₂

/kʌmšəwa ʔinlet ǵaw gi ʔalʌŋ hʌlʃagʌŋgin/

"We went up Cumshewa Inlet."

kumšəwa ʔInlet Cumshewa Inlet, {ǵa} "at, in," {hAw} foreground, {gi} "to," {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {hʌlʃa}"collect, gather" - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic"- {gʌŋ} "past tense"

It should be noted that in C₂ we find the sequence ga hAw gi. As has previously been explained, a sequence of postpositions generally forms part of a constituent, and hence will appear to the left of the foreground marker {hAw}. In C₂, however, {ǵa} and {gi} do not form a constituent, as the placement of {hAw} makes clear. This difference in constituent structure is doubtless connected with the fact that {gi} is idiomatically associated with the predicate {hʌlʃa} and thus, for example, cannot be permuted to the right of the predicate as ordinary "unattached" postpositions, and the larger constructions to which they belong, may: *ʔalʌŋ hʌlʃagʌŋgin gi ʔa.

6.3.12 Twelfth Discourse Unit

The twelfth discourse unit consists of three sentential units, the first and third containing a

single clause and the second containing two clause units.

6.3.12.1 S₁

/huyaddu gAm gaŋaŋ xʌn ʔalʌŋ waǰʌŋa/

"We don't do like that these days."

{huyad} "now, today," {hʌw} foreground, {gAm} negative, {gaŋaŋ} "resemble," {xʌn} emphatic, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {wa} "do" - {ǰʌŋ} negative - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

6.3.12.2 S₂

/gəsbʌwt xadala ʔis dyu kʌmšəwa ǰaw gi ʔalʌŋ

hʌlʌxʌʔingʌŋin/ "When there were small gasboats we used to go up Cumsheva Inlet."

gəsbʌwt "gasboat," {xa}- shape element + {-dala} "plural," {ʔiʃ} existence predicate, {di} "while," {hʌw} foreground, kʌmšəwa Cumsheva, {ǰa} "at, in," {hʌw} foreground, {gi} "to," {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {hʌlʌxʌ} "gather, collect" + {-ʔin} "by boat" - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {gʌŋ} "past tense"

Here too it is difficult to understand why {hʌw} follows both {di} and {ǰa}. The distribution of

the foreground marker is certainly one of the more problematic areas of Haida morphosyntax.

6.3.12.3 S₃

/wa gu ʔʌnmu ʔalʌŋ kaʒasʌdagʌŋin/ "We used to dry it right there."

{wa} "over there," {gu} "there," {ʔʌn} emphatic, {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ka} "dry" + -{ʒa} "change of state" + -{sʌʌ} "permeation" + -{da} "causative" - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {gʌŋ} "past tense"

6.3.13 Thirteenth Discourse Unit

The thirteenth discourse unit consists of two sentential units, the first containing three clause units and the second containing two clause units.

6.3.13.1 S₁

/gyan kaʒasi hu ʔan gi ʔalʌŋ ʔisdasi gyanmu ʔalʌŋ ʔigʌŋin/ "When it's dry we bring it over here and we grind it."

6.3.13.1.1 C₁

/gyan kaʒasi hu/ "When it's dry... "
 {gyan} "when," {ka} "dry" + -{ʒa} "change of state" - {i} old information anaphora, {hʌw} foreground

6.3.13.1.2 C₂

/ʔan gi ʔalʌŋ ʔisdasi gyanu/ "We bring it over here..."

{ʔan} "here," {gi} "to," {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ʔisda} action predicate - {s} dependent structure - {i} old information anaphora

6.3.13.1.3 C₃

/ʔalʌŋ ʃigʌŋgin/ "We grind it."

{ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ʃi} "grind" - {gʌŋ} "habitual/periodic" - {gʌŋ} "past tense"

6.3.13.2 S₂

/ʃanudan ʃi ʔalʌŋ ga ʔisdas hu ʔada ʔalʌŋ ʌŋgʌʔgaga/ "We put some in the stove and we fix it different."

6.3.13.2.1 C₁

/ʃanudan ʃi ʔalʌŋ ga ʔisdas hu/ "We put some in the stove..."

{ʃanu} "fire, firewood" +-{dan} "place," {ʃi} "through," {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ga} "some," {ʔisda} action predicate - {s} dependent structure, {hʌw} foreground

6.3.13.2.2 C₂

/ʔada ʔalʌŋ ʌgʊɹǰaga/ "We fix it different."

{ʔada} "different," {ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {ʌ} - "by hand" + {gʊɹǰa}

"accomplish" - {ga} neutral tense/modal suffix

6.3.14 Fourteenth Discourse Unit

The fourteenth discourse unit consists of a single one-clause sentential unit.

/gay ʔad ʔasiŋ ʔalʌŋ gyadaɰwan/ "We used to sell that too."

{gay} "that (stuff)," {ʔad} "with," {ʔasiŋ} "also,"

{ʔalʌŋ} "first person plural (active)," {gya} "in-

transitive" + {daɰ(u)} "exchange" - {gʌŋ} neutral

old information anaphora

Chapter 7 Haida in Context

It is perhaps worthwhile to conclude this study with some comments on the general structural flavor of the Skidegate dialect with respect to other languages in the Northwest. On the whole, Haida is quite unusual in this areal context, and the linguist with field experience in other parts of the Northwest will very likely be impressed by the lack of affinity to be found between Haida and other languages of the region. Even in the more limited setting of the northern Northwest Coast, some of whose languages have exerted a certain typological pressure on Haida, there is a striking shallowness in the resemblances between the Athapaskan languages, Eyak and Tlingit on the one hand and Skidegate on the other. When one extends the frame of comparison to the more southerly families, the anomalous status of Haida becomes still more strongly marked..

The northern group of languages referred to in the preceding paragraph have invested a large amount of effort in evolving aspectual distinctions

of considerable complexity. In certain instances these distinctions impose synchronically unanalyzable variations on the phonological shape of roots; the Athapaskan languages are well-known for this sort of pattern. In some cases, stem shape variation alone indicates the aspectual meaning; in other cases certain prefixes are also present which refer to aspect. Moreover, the aspects are (in standard treatments of Athapaskan languages) divided into two cross-cutting categories, often labelled "aspects" and "modes" respectively. The distribution of prefixes with respect to these categories is highly complex.

In addition to this aspectual treatment, the northern languages categorize shape differences at fundamental levels of the grammar. In Athapaskan, these differences are indicated by extensive suppletion in the predicate stem. In some cases this suppletion is extreme enough to cause one to wonder if totally different lexical items may not be involved (as in the well-known example of "lie" vs. "sit" vs. "stand" in English to indicate maintenance of a stationary position, the predicate being determined by the shape of the object referred to.) In other cases the suppletion is no more radical than that evident in purely aspectual suppletion.

In Tlingit this noun classification system overlaps another central part of the grammar, the so-called classifiers, discussed brilliantly and decisively by Krauss (1969). He demonstrates that this aspect of prefix morphology was common to Athapaskan-Eyak and Tlingit, and that it consisted in three position classes which may be summarized as (d)S(y), where S labels a position class with four members: ϕ , s, \check{s} , \ddot{s} . The d component identifies "predicate-centered" forms (Krauss 1969, p. 66) which appear to be used in instances in which the action is not conceived as extending to something beyond the actor-action axis (e.g., reflexives, reciprocals, self-benefactives etc.) or is not conceived as originating with a well-defined agent (as in forms comparable to the French "on..." construction.) The y component cannot be summarized neatly in terms of semantic function; its distribution is largely determined by the aspectual system of Tlingit. The S class member which appears in any given verb is selected on the basis of whether or not certain derivational elements are present in the verb morphology, and also on the basis of shape classification. In Athapaskan languages the choice of the S-class prefix is a function only of the

derivational prefixes associated with the verb root. It should be noted that here, as elsewhere, the choice of derivational prefix has important consequences for verb inflection in Athapaskan.

The facts summarized in the foregoing paragraphs indicate that aspectual inflection, shape categorization and the complex grammar of the "classifiers"--three fundamentally interrelated aspects of Athapaskan-Eyak and Tlingit grammar--are pervasive factors in the organization of these languages. They are, in some sense, much of what the Na-Dene languages (using Na-Dene in a restricted sense, excluding Haida) are about. For the language learner they represent a large part of the major difficulty in gaining fluency and are the factors which make Athapaskan seem, to English speakers, so extraordinarily, even impossibly, intricate and demanding.

Regarded from this perspective, the foregoing chapters should make it evident that Haida's inflectional machinery is comparatively minor. The aspectual system is quite straightforward and not at all elaborate; there is no need whatsoever for the "paradigm" descriptions common in Athapaskan grammatical descriptions. Most of the inflectional system refers to aspect or tense, with other meanings

associated with or superimposed on these in some cases. There are four or five instances in which one finds stem shape suppletion on the basis of number; in all but one of these, it should be noted, the suppletion is extreme and probably indicates that the roots are conceived as totally different lexical items. As I have indicated in this study and elsewhere (Levine 1976) the shape prefixes in Skidegate--in fact the prefixes in general--appear to be almost afterthoughts, and are very probably late elaborations. Tlingit has apparently influenced Haida sufficiently for the latter to have developed some sort of shape distinctions, even if these are, relatively speaking, only superficially tied to the verb. But there is absolutely nothing parallel to the classifier positions in Haida, Pinnow's speculations to the contrary notwithstanding. The frequently noted possible significance of the cluster-initial fricatives *s* and *ʃ* in this connection receives no support from any available data. All one can say is that the two front fricatives form a natural phonological class from several points of view--position in the syllable, co-occurrence restrictions with respect to semi-vowels, effect on following *ʌ*--and display no parallelisms whatever with the *s* and *ʃ* of the Tlingit classifier system. The latter two are generally phonologically conditioned alternants; in Haida shape prefixes *s* and

± contrast and in at least one instance distinguish two of the shape elements from each other. There is no evidence at all to suggest they be segmented and given morphological status in a synchronic description, nor any indication that they had morphological status historically. Nor do the other members of the classifier position classes have any analogues in Skidegate; predicate-focussed constructions, as defined in terms of the Na-Dene languages, do not exist in Skidegate except, perhaps, in forms containing the "middle" suffix *-{ga}*.

It is true that Skidegate has a distinction between active and neutral bases, comparable to that found between active and neuter bases in the Na-Dene languages. But whereas in Haida the distinction is based on the choice of pronominal sets, in the Na-Dene languages this is not always so; the primary criterion in the latter case is the number of aspectual paradigms available to the base. Neuter bases only have a single paradigm available for any given predicate base (though the particular paradigm varies from base to base); active bases have the full range of paradigms available. Apart from this difference in the distinction between active and non-active roots, there seem to be some semantic differences between what Haida regards as neutral and what the other languages regard

as neutral. It is fair to say, however, that in Haida, as in Na-Dene, the difference between neutral and active seems fundamental in the grammar.

If the basic structural concerns of Athapaskan-Eyak and Tlingit appear to have little to do with Haida, for the most part, this is emphatically the case when one considers Wakashan or Salishan in relation to Haida. The differences here transcend matters of specific detail; they concern the essential philosophy of the languages involved, if one may speak in such terms. To take a single instance, that of the value of the noun/verb distinction: in Haida, there is an extremely strict division between these two classes, morphologically as well as syntactically. Probably fewer than ten roots can appear indifferently with nominal or predicative inflection. In Athapaskan there is far more overlap, enough so that Hoiyer supposed it reasonably likely that the two classes may at one time have been identical (Sapir and Hoiyer 1967, p. 73.) At the same time, there are, synchronically, significant formal differences between nouns and verbs, since the latter appear with derivational material which nouns (save those derived from verbs) lack. In Wakashan, however, the distinction between nouns and verbs is almost non-existent. Note, for example, the following pair of Kwakwala sentences:

/hanaboliŋu^wda gəldasiŋ/ "The box is under the table."

/gəldasu^wda hanaboliŋiŋ/ "It's a box under the table."

In the first sentence, /gəldas/ "box" is the subject of /hanaboliŋ/ "underneath in the house" and receives deictic inflection -iŋ in accord with the suffix cluster -u^w-da which indicates that the form immediately following is the subject of the predicate and is proximate to the hearer or, more loosely, to the speech situation. In the second sentence, /gəldas/ is the predicate and /hanaboliŋ/ is the subject of /gəldas/. The inflectional treatment of subject and predicate is identical in the two sentences. Furthermore, /gəldas/ can receive tense inflection and /hanaboliŋ/ possessive inflection. It has been long recognized that in languages like these the noun/verb opposition is blurred to a degree unsurpassed anywhere else in the world. Salishan displays the same weakness in the contrast, although perhaps not to as great an extent. Note however the following typical pair from Thompson:

wikne he spe[?]ec "I saw the bear."

spe[?]ec e wikne "It was a bear I saw."

(Thomson 1976.) The form /he/ in the first sentence is a direct complement marker with underlying shape e (as in

the second example.) The first and second sentences are thus identical except that, as Thompson notes, "'subjects' and 'predicates' simply switch position." There are other examples of the indifferent use of the same form in subject and predicate positions given by Thompson.

Both Salishan and Wakashan show tremendous concern for spatial delineation and deictic reference; particularly in Salishan, deixis represents an impressively elaborate and sophisticated part of the grammar, often subsuming notions comparable to tense in other families. In Northern Wakashan, subsuming Kwakwala, Heiltsuk and Haisla, deixis is less subtle but perhaps more systematic, associated with positions in the speech situation. In both families, spatial identification is a constant theme: many Wakashan roots identify spatial relations, e.g. Kwakwala *nəq-* "neither one side nor the other," *q^wis-* "other side," *?aps-* "adjacent side," *?ik²-* "above," etc. There are a number of examples in both Northern and Southern Wakashan languages in which a root cannot be inflected unless a suffix indicating spatial position is attached. Both branches of Wakashan have dozens of suffixes identifying locations, positions in space, types of orientation and so on with varying degrees of abstractness and geographic reference. Salishan languages have a

less elaborate inventory of suffixes, but there are many of these and their use pervades Salishan word-formation.

In Haida most spatial identification is made by the postpositions. Here Haida is much more like the northern languages discussed above than the southern. In Athapaskan-Eyak and Tlingit spatial postpositions supply most information of this sort. In none of the northern languages, including Haida, do spatial distinctions receive so much attention in the grammar of the predicate as they do in Wakashan. Haida does possess a well-defined and quite limited set of spatial suffixes, which appear to be used mostly in conjunction with predicates of motion or posture. Although I do not possess extensive data in this matter, it is my impression that Skidegate speakers quite willingly accept predicate forms which omit these spatial suffixes, at least in some contexts, where one would expect them to be required.

I am aware that in this survey I have been characterizing Haida in terms of negative features. Since the language is a total isolate which has not been profoundly influenced by neighboring tongues such characterization is perhaps inevitable from a typological point of view. But there is another factor involved. The languages of the Northwest tend to differ rather spectacularly from

those of the Indo-European family. It is typical of this situation that, for example, in Salishan languages all roots are intransitive, and transitive constructions are rather "marked," reflecting a grammatical philosophy in which situations have no necessary connection with entities which might be participants in those situations. But in Haida the English speaker finds little of this sort of thing. The breakup of the universe of meaning into pieces in Haida, and the assignment of these pieces to grammatical forms, reveals a patterning not at all unfamiliar to speakers of Indo-European languages. The predicate indicates values of tense, aspect, number and modality; direct objects have no special marker, but indirect objects are separated from other constituents by particles in constructions which are syntactically identical to other types of constructions not involving indirect objects (preposition phrases in English), but rather supplying spatial or temporal information; prefixes are derivational, but suffixes are either derivational or inflectional. The resemblance to English persists in small details: the positional distinction between the future and the other tense forms in Skidegate is quite comparable to the same distinction

in English. The tense system shows other parallels; thus, in both English and Haida the past tense is morphologically more clearly specified than the so-called 'present tense,' which has aspectual meaning as well. Haida predicates--verbs and adjectives--correspond semantically quite closely to Haida predicates; Haida {?iʃ} is in several respects similar to the English copula; the precise aspectual distinctions which Haida makes are often quite easily translated by English aspectual morphemes.

This general resemblance in the overall "feel" of Haida--especially English and the Romance languages--is based on details of morphology and conditioned by what is doubtless a somewhat subjective sense of the "genius" of the language based on contact with a good deal of Skidegate data. It is difficult to assess the status of such intuitions, of course. Yet, whether or not they have any value, it is worth noting that English-speaking investigators have never, to my knowledge, expressed such impressions about any other language or family in the Northwest.

INDEX OF AFFIXES AND PARTICLES

The entries in this Index are ordered according to the place of their initial segments in the articulatory schemas of consonants and vowels given in section 2.2.1. Vowels precede consonants. Numbers refer to the page on which the most detailed discussion of the item in question begins.

-{i} old information anaphora.	122
{wa} distal.	198
{waʌu} "all".	217
-{d} connective (?).	211
-{di} durative.	110
{di} "while".	203
{di} "first person singular (neutral)".	171
{da} "second person singular (active)".	171
{da}- "by pushing".	156
-{da} causative.	135
-{dan} "place where".	90
{daʌŋ} "second person plural".	171
{dʌb}- shape element.	149
{dʌm}- shape element.	149
-{dʌl} predicate-forming element.	131
-{dʌŋ} "go out collecting".	138

{dʌŋ}	"second person singular (neutral)"	171
{dʌŋ}	"by pulling".	157
{dʌŋʔad}	"with".	189
{tay}	- shape element.	142
{tʌwǧʌŋ}	"beside".	189
-{ʔisgu}	meaning unknown.	90
{ʔa}	- shape element.	143
{ʔaw}	- shape element.	144
{ʔʌb}	- shape element.	149
{ʔʌm}	- shape element.	149
-{ʔʌʔ}	"downward".	129
{ʔʌʌŋ}	"first person plural (active)".	171
{ʔʌʌgi}	"over, across".	188
{naŋ}	"some person".	91
-{ʃu}	"return from".	136
-{ʃu}	predicate-forming element.	131
{ci}	- shape element.	146
-{ći}	"into".	128
-{ćid}	plural.	97
{ćis}	- shape element.	146
-{s}	old information.	97
-{s}	dependent (adverbial) structure.	168
-{s}	embedded (object) structure.	166
{sih}	"above".	192

{sda} "from".	186
<u>sda</u> ~ <u>sga</u> - shape element.	143
-{sλλ} permeation.	133
{s ² λλ}- shape element.	145
-{sgī} "almost".	113
{sgλb}- shape element.	150
{sgλm}- shape element.	150
{ska}- shape element.	145
{s ² ka}- shape element.	143
{skyan} "in spite of".	204
{squd}- "by the use of the arms".	158
{squd}- shape element.	148
{sq̄a}- shape element.	144
{yu}- shape element.	148
{λλ}- shape element.	147
-{λλ} "motion in a vehicle".	130
{λu} "if, when".	200
{λan} "stop".	217
-{λagλη} "first".	134
{λλ}- "by the use of the hands".	161
{λλgu} "manner, way".	180
<u>λλgid</u> "all over".	212
{λu}- "by boat".	157
{λ ² ad}- shape element.	150

{ʃʌ}	"some persons".	91
-(ʃʌga)	"everything".	136
-(ʃʌǰa)	"to a destination".	130
{ʃa}	imperative.	206
{ʃa}	"first person singular (active)".	171
-(ʃʌ)	"upward".	129
-(ʃʌŋa)	"can...".	137
{ʃi}	shape element.	145
{ʃǰa}	shape element.	139
{ʃǰa}	shape element.	142
{la}	"third person (active)".	171
{lʌ}	"third person (neutral)".	171
-(lʌŋ)	plural.	97
{gi}	"to"	186
{gi}	shape element.	147
-(gi)	"always, already".	112
{gin}	"where...?".	178
{ginis}	"which one...?".	180
{gina}	"what".	180
{gisǰu}	"who...?".	177
{gislu}	"how much, many".	179
{gin}	- causative".	161
{gikus}	"what...?".	179
-(giǰʌŋ)	meaning unknown.	130

{ga} "some".	214
-{ga} middle.	127
-{ga} neutral tense/modal suffix.	119
-{ga} evidential.	116
-{gasin} "how...?".	177
{gay}- "by floating".	157
-{gay} nominal old information.	97
{gan} "resemblance".	215
{gam} "negative".	205
-{gan} "past tense".	121
-{gan} embedded (object) clause.	166
-{gan} iterative.	137
-{gan} "habitual/periodic".	114
-{gan} neutral old information anaphora.	120
{gu} "there".	182
{gu}- shape element.	141
{gud} "reciprocal".	193
{gus} "what...?".	178
{gulu} "as much as".	214
{gwa} interrogative.	207
{gya} possessive.	216
-{gya} meaning uncertain.	89
{gya}- intransitivizes.	162
{gyan} "if, when".	201
{kid}- "with something pointed".	158

{kil}- "tell to".	161
{kunġasda} "before".	202
{kyah} "outside".	193
{kʌ}- shape element.	148
{ku}- shape element.	144
{kyawġa} "until".	204
-(xidi} "imminent".	109
{xʌ}- shape element.	148
-(xuɹ} "out (of)".	129
{ġi} "through".	187
{ġa} "at, in".	185
{ġa}- shape element.	140
-(ġa} translocative.	135
-(ġa} change of state.	127
-(ġas} "future".	115
{ġagʌn} "because".	201
{ġaŋa} plural.	216
<u>ġaʔadġa</u> meaning uncertain.	216
{ġʌn} "for".	188
-(ġʌŋ} negative.	114
-(ġu} plural.	113
-(ġʌŋ} random motion.	129
{qil}- shape element.	149
{qʌwɹi} "after".	203

{ǫad}	"across".	191
{ǫay}	- shape element.	141
{ǫu}	- "by use of the teeth".	157
{ǫuǝ}	- shape element.	147
{ǫuǝga}	"near".	187
{ǝid}	"below".	181
{ǝa}	distributive.	190
{ǝa}	- "by the use of the arms".	160
<u>ǝagid</u>	"inside".	212
{ǝʌn}	- shape element.	142
{ǝʌn}	emphatic.	209
-{ǝʌl}	imperative.	137
-{ǝʌn}	plural.	133
{ǝʌn}	"in front of".	182
-{ʔin}	translocative.	136
{ʔis}	- shape element.	147
{ʔiʌʌ}	"first person plural (neutral)".	171
{ʔa}	constituent permutation.	205
{ʔa}	proximate.	196
{ʔad}	"with".	189
{ʔada}	"different".	210
{ʔasin}	"also".	217
<u>ʔasgid</u>	"around here".	211

{?aŋa} "yes".	210
{?ʌn} predicate-forming element.	132
{?u} "it".	212
-{?u} singular.	132
-{?u} instrumental.	86
{?ʌn} "surface (of)".	181
{?ʌn}- "by use of the back".	158
{hitəgʌn} "a little while ago".	194
{hʌw} foreground.	208
{hʌw} middle distance.	196
{huyad} "now, today".	195

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Boas, F. 1894 "Classification of the Languages of the North Pacific Coast," in Memoirs of the International Congress of Anthropologists, pp. 339-346.
- 1911 "Introduction," Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin 40, pp. 1-83, Washington, D.C.
- Chafe, W. 1970 Meaning and the Structure of Language, The University of Chicago Press, Chicago.
- Chomsky, N. 1964 Current Issues in Linguistic Theory, Mouton and Co., The Hague.
- Chomsky, N. and Halle, M. 1968 The Sound Pattern of English, Harper and Row, N.Y.
- Davidson, W. et al. 1963 "Athapaskan Classificatory Verbs," in Studies in the Athapaskan Languages, Hoijer, H. ed., University of California Publications in Linguistics 29.
- Dorian, N. 1973 "Grammatical Change in a Dying Dialect," Language 49, pp. 413-438.
- Duff, W. and Kew, M. 1973 "Ninstints, a Haida Community on Anthony Island," Journal of the Queen Charlotte Islands Museum Society 3,1, pp. 34-42, Port Clements, British Columbia.

- Dunn, J. 1974 "Preverbal Position in Coast Tsim-Tsimshian," IJAL 40, pp.
- Goddard, P. E. 1920 "Has Tlingit a Genetic Relation with Athapaskan?," IJAL 1, pp. 266-279.
- Haeberlin, H. 1923 "Notes on the Composition of the Verbal Stem in Haida," IJAL 2, pp. 159-162.
- Halle, M. 1959 The Sound Pattern of Russian, Mouton and Co., The Hague.
- Harrison, C. 1893 Haida Grammar, Proceedings and Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada 1, pt. 2, pp. 123-226.
- Howren, R. 1971 "A Formalization of the Athapaskan D-effect," IJAL 37, pp. 96-113.
- Hymes, D. 1956 "Na-Dene and the Positional Analysis of Categories," American Anthropologist 58, pp. 624-638
- Keen, W. 1906 A Grammar of the Haida Language, Church Missionary Society.
- Kinkade, D. 1975 "Pluralization in Upper Chehalis," Lektos (Papers from the Tenth International Salishan Languages Conference), pp. 1-56, University of Louisville.
- Krauss, M. 1969 On the Classifiers in the Athapaskan, Eyak and Tlingit Verb, IJAL 35, 4, pt.2.
- 1973 "Na-Dene," Current Trends in Linguistics 10, pp. 903-978.
- Levine, R. 1976 "Haida and Na-Dene: the Status of the Evidence," revised version of a paper presented at the Eleventh International Salishan Languages Conference.



- Levine, R. and Cooper, F. 1976
 "The Suppression of B. C. Indian Languages: Filling in the Gaps in the Documentary Evidence," Sound Heritage 4, 3/4, pp. 43-74, Queen's Printer (Provincial Archives of British Columbia), Victoria, B. C.
- Piddocke, S. 1965 "The Potlatch System of the Southern Kwakiutl: a New Perspective," Southwestern Journal of Anthropology 21, pp. 244-264
- Pinnow, H.-J., 1968
 "Genetic Relationship vs. Borrowing in Na-Dene," IJAL 34, pp. 204-211
- Postal, P. 1968 Aspects of Phonological Theory, Harper and Row, N. Y.
- Rosman, A. and Rubel, P. 1971
Feasting with Mine Enemy, Columbia University Press, N.Y.
- Sapir, E. 1915 "The Na-Dene Languages: a Preliminary Report," American Anthropologist 17, pp. 534-558
- 1923 "The Phonetics of Haida," IJAL 2, pp. 143-158
- Sapir, E. and Hoiijer, H. 1967
The Phonology and Morphology of the Navajo Language, University of California Publications in Linguistics 50.
- Schane, S. 1971 "The Phoneme Revisited," Language 47, pp. 503- 521.
- Suttles, W. 1960 "Affinal Ties, Subsistence and Prestige amongst the Coast Salish," American Anthropologist 62, pp. 296-305.

- Stathan, D. 1973 "Man, Culture and the Natural Environment: a Problem in Human Ecology and a Comparison of the Coast and Interior Salish," paper prepared for the Seminar on Western America, Idaho State University.
- Swanton, J. R. 1905 Contributions to the Ethnology of the Haida, Memoir of the American Museum of Natural History 8, pt. 1, N. Y.
- 1908 Social Condition, Beliefs and Linguistic Relationship of the Tlingit Indians, Bureau of American Ethnology Annual Report, 1904-1905, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, D. C.
- 1911 Haida, Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin 40, pp. 205-282.
- Thompson, L. 1976 Personal communication.
- Turner, N. J. 1974 Plant Taxonomic Systems and Ethnobotany of Three Contemporary Indian Groups of the Pacific Northwest (Haida, Bella Coola and Lillooet), Syesis 7, supplement 1, Queen's Printer, Victoria
- Welsch, R. 1976 "Features and Processes in Hydaburg Haida," Working Papers of the Eleventh International Salishan Languages Conference, University of Washington.